

Circuit Shop v1.09 - March 2000
Copyright © 1997-2000 Cherrywood Systems.
All rights reserved.

This manual is a printed version of Circuit Shop's help file. There are two parts to the manual:

- The first part lists the help topics which make up Circuit Shop's reference manual. Pages in this portion are numbered **1** through **95**.
- The second part lists the topics which make up Circuit Shop's tutorial. Pages in this portion are numbered **200** through **297**.

In the on-line help system, help topics are selected by clicking on a highlighted word or set of words in a topic. In this manual, topics are referenced as page number footnotes. In other words, a footnote specifies the page number where the topic can be found. For example, the footnote on the following text, Purchasing information⁷ indicates the topic can be found on page **7**.



Circuit Shop Help

Copyright © 1997-2000 Cherrywood Systems.
All rights reserved.

Before You Begin

- [What is Circuit Shop⁵](#)
- [Technical support¹⁰](#)
- [FAQ - frequently asked questions⁵](#)
- [Purchasing information⁷](#)
- [Warranty¹⁰](#)

Getting Started

- [Starting and exiting Circuit Shop¹¹](#)
- [Creating and editing diagrams¹¹](#)
- [Help topic tree³](#)

Tutorials

- [Tutorial help topics²⁰¹](#)
- [General tutorial introduction and instructions²⁰¹](#)
- [Resistors and simple circuits²⁰⁵](#)
- [Capacitors, inductors and transformers²³⁷](#)
- [Alternating current²⁵⁵](#)
- [Semiconductors²⁷⁰](#)
- [Digital circuits²⁸²](#)
- [Tutorial topic tree²⁰³](#)

Circuit Analysis

- [Circuit analysis help topics²²](#)
- [DC analysis²²](#)
- [Sinusoidal steady state analysis²⁵](#)
- [Frequency response²⁷](#)
- [Digital analysis³²](#)

References

- [Circuit Shop files⁷⁵](#)
- [Toolkits⁵¹ - Digital⁵¹ - Analog⁵² - Paint⁵⁴](#)
- [Dialog boxes⁶²](#)
- [Glossary⁷⁸](#)
- [Hints⁷⁶](#)
- [Menu commands³⁷](#)
- [Toolbar commands³⁷](#)
- [Unit conversion⁷⁵](#)

Topic Tree

The following topic tree shows the structure of and provides quick access to Circuit Shop's help topics.

Contents²

What is Circuit Shop⁵

Technical support¹⁰

FAQ - frequently asked questions⁵

Purchasing information⁷

by cheque or money order⁸

by web transaction⁹

by purchase order⁹

Warranty¹⁰

Starting and exiting Circuit Shop¹¹

Creating and editing diagrams¹¹

Creating a new diagram window¹⁵

Opening an existing diagram¹⁸

Adding devices or objects to a diagram¹²

Deleting devices or objects from a diagram¹⁵

Diagram annotations¹⁵

Adding text objects to a diagram¹³

Adding line objects to a diagram¹³

Adding¹² - moving¹⁶ - deleting a line vertex¹⁵

Moving an entire line object¹⁸

Selecting objects¹⁸

Modifying device values or other object attributes¹⁶

Moving devices or objects¹⁷

Rotating devices or objects¹⁸

Edit | Undo⁴⁵ - Redo⁴⁵

Edit | Cut⁴⁴ - Copy⁴³ - Paste⁴⁴ - Append⁴³ - Select all⁴⁵

Connecting devices - adding wires¹⁴

Adding¹² - moving¹⁶ - deleting a wire vertex¹⁵

Creating circuits inside integrated circuits²⁰

Viewing circuit voltage and current values - adding meters²⁰

Analysing a circuit¹⁹

Tutorial help topics²⁰¹

General tutorial introduction and instructions²⁰¹

Resistors and simple circuits tutorial²⁰⁵

Capacitors, inductors and transformers²³⁷

Alternating Current²⁵⁵

Semiconductors²⁷⁰

Digital circuits²⁸²

Tutorial topic tree²⁰³

Circuit analysis help topics²²

DC analysis²² - supported devices²³

Sinusoidal steady state analysis²⁵ - supported devices²⁶

Frequency response²⁷ - supported devices²⁶

Digital analysis³² - supported devices³²

Digital sources³³

Logic gates³⁴

Flip-flops³⁴

Digital displays³⁶

Device meter²⁹

[Circuit analyzer](#)³⁰

[Device and drawing toolkits](#)⁵¹

[Digital device toolkit](#)⁵¹

[Analog device toolkit](#)⁵²

[Sub-toolkits](#)⁵³

[Audio toolkit](#)⁵⁷

[Capacitor toolkit](#)⁶⁰

[Diode toolkit](#)⁵⁶

[Ground toolkit](#)⁵⁶

[Inductor toolkit](#)⁶⁰

[Resistor toolkit](#)⁵⁹

[Source toolkit](#)⁵⁸

[Switch toolkit](#)⁵⁹

[Terminal and plug toolkit](#)⁵⁷

[Transistor toolkit](#)⁵⁵

[Miscellaneous toolkit](#)⁶¹

[Paint toolkit](#)⁵⁴

[Menu commands](#)³⁷

[File commands](#)³⁹

[New](#)³⁹ - [Open](#)³⁹ - [Save](#)³⁹ - [Save as](#)⁴⁰ - [Revert](#)⁴⁰ - [Close](#)⁴⁰

[Print](#)⁴⁰ - [Print preview](#)⁴¹ - [Printer setup](#)⁴¹

[Output BMP file](#)⁴¹

[Register](#)⁴¹

[Exit](#)⁴²

[Edit commands](#)⁴³

[Undo](#)⁴⁵ - [Redo](#)⁴⁵

[Cut](#)⁴⁴ - [Copy](#)⁴³ - [Paste](#)⁴⁴ - [Append](#)⁴³ - [Select all](#)⁴⁵

[Delete](#)⁴⁴ - [Clear all](#)⁴³

[View commands](#)⁴⁹

[Digital toolkit](#)⁴⁹ - [Analog toolkit](#)⁴⁹ - [Paint toolkit](#)⁴⁹

[Tool commands](#)⁴⁶

[Analyse](#)⁴⁶

[Digital analysis on](#)⁴⁷ - [off](#)⁴⁷

[Pen Size](#)⁴⁷ - [Foreground Color](#)⁴⁷ - [Background Color](#)⁴⁸

[Font](#)⁴⁷

[Drawing Grid](#)⁴⁸

[Help commands](#)⁴⁹

[Contents](#)² - [Search](#)^{Error! Bookmark not defined.}

[Purchasing information](#)⁷

[Dialog boxes](#)⁶²

[Edit Analyzer dialog box](#)⁶²

[Edit Axis Information dialog box](#)⁶⁴

[Edit Device dialog box](#)⁶⁴

[Edit Drawing Grid dialog box](#)⁶⁵

[Edit Flip-flop dialog box](#)⁶⁵

[Edit IC dialog box](#)⁶⁶

[Edit Logic Gate dialog box](#)⁶⁷

[Edit Meter dialog box](#)⁶⁸

[Edit Source dialog box](#)⁶⁹

[Edit Text dialog box](#)⁷⁰

[Edit Transformer dialog box](#)⁷⁰

[Print dialog box](#)⁷¹

[Printer Setup dialog box](#)⁷¹

[Registration dialog box](#)⁷²

[Select File dialog box](#)⁷²

[Select Font dialog box](#)⁷⁴

[Glossary](#)⁷⁸

What is Circuit Shop

Circuit Shop allows you to design, simulate and learn about [digital](#)⁸⁴ and [analog](#)⁸¹ electronic circuits. Circuit Shop is an easy to use graphical CAD tool to allow simple digital and analog electronic circuits to be constructed and analyzed. It includes:

- [Device and drawing toolkits](#)⁵¹ to construct simple electronic circuit schematics consisting of digital and analog devices such as [logic gates](#),³⁴ [flip-flops](#),³⁴ [op. amps](#),⁸⁸ [dependent sources](#),⁸⁴ [ICs](#),⁸⁹ [transistors](#),⁹⁴ [resistors](#),⁹² [batteries](#),⁸² etc.
- A [tutorial](#)²⁰¹ which teaches basic digital and analog electronic concepts.
- [Digital circuit](#)⁸⁴ design and [analysis](#)³² capability using [digital sources](#),³³ [logic gates](#),³⁴ [flip-flops](#),³⁴ [digital displays](#)³⁶ and [ICs](#).⁸⁹
- [Analog circuit](#)⁸¹ design and simulation capability to perform [DC analysis](#),²² [sinusoidal steady state analysis](#)²⁵ and [frequency response](#).²⁷ Frequency response includes magnitude, Bode, phase, dB and group delay plots.
- A simple [paint toolkit](#)⁵⁴ to allow text, lines, ovals and rectangles to be added as circuit annotations.
- A printable version of Circuit Shop's on-line help file can be downloaded from the Circuit Shop [home page](#).¹⁰ The fully indexed document consists of a reference manual and tutorial.

Circuit Shop runs on Windows 3.1/95/98/NT.

Keywords: circuit design analysis simulation electric electrical electronic educational tutorial digital analog device logic gate flip-flop op amp dependent source DC AC sinusoidal steady state frequency response Bode phase dB group delay IC schematic CAD drawing paint toolkit

Related Topics:

[Frequently asked questions](#)⁵

[Topic tree](#)³

[Creating and editing diagrams](#)¹¹

[Tutorial help topics](#)²⁰¹

[Circuit analysis help topics](#)²²

[Purchasing information](#)⁷

Frequently Asked Questions

If you have a question or are having a problem with Circuit Shop, browse the following questions and answers, it is possible that your question may be answered below.

1. [What device types are supported by Circuit Shop's circuit analysis function?](#)²²

A list of supported devices for each analysis type can be found in:

- [DC analysis supported devices](#)²³
- [Sinusoidal steady state analysis supported devices](#)²⁶
- [Frequency response supported devices](#)²⁶
- [Digital analysis supported devices](#)³²

2. [How do I create circuits in Circuit Shop?](#)

How do I become familiar with Circuit Shop features?
How do I use Circuit Shop's circuit analysis capabilities?

To become familiar with how to build and analyze circuits you can follow the step-by-step instructions in one or more of the following [tutorial](#)²⁰¹ demonstration topics.

[Ohm's law demonstration circuit](#)²⁰⁷
[Series circuit demonstration circuit](#)²¹⁵
[Parallel circuit demonstration circuit](#)²²⁵
[Series RLC demonstration circuit](#)²⁶⁴
[Logic gate demonstration circuit](#)²⁸⁷

Instructions on how to use Circuit Shop's [circuit analysis](#)²² functions can be found in the following help topics.

[DC analysis](#)²²
[Sinusoidal steady state analysis](#)²⁵
[Frequency response](#)²⁷
[Digital analysis](#)³²

Two help topic trees are also provided as an index to easily navigate between topics and to show how Circuit Shop help topics are organized.

[Help topic tree](#)³
[Tutorial topic tree](#)²⁰³

3. [Is a reference manual available?](#)

Yes. A printable version of Circuit Shop's on-line help file can be downloaded from the Circuit Shop [home page](#).¹⁰ The fully indexed document consists of a reference manual and tutorial.

4. [Why won't my circuit work?](#) [Why won't the \[device meter\]\(#\)²⁹ voltage appear?](#) ...

Some variant of the above [circuit analysis](#)²² related questions are the number one reported "problems" with two main causes:

a) Attempting to analyze a circuit with unsupported devices.
A list of supported devices can be found in:

- [DC analysis supported devices](#)²³
- [Sinusoidal steady state analysis supported devices](#)²⁶
- [Frequency response supported devices](#)²⁶
- [Digital analysis supported devices](#)³²

b) Attempting to analyze a circuit with unconnected devices.

Sometimes devices are placed very near or over each other but are not correctly connected by [wires](#).⁹⁵ An easy way to determine if two or more devices are correctly connected is to hold down the left mouse button over one of the devices and drag it to another diagram location (see [moving devices](#)¹⁷ for additional information). If a wire does not move to keep the devices connected, the devices are not electrically connected in the circuit (see [connecting devices](#)¹⁴ for additional information). Circuit Shop also detects disconnected wires and devices, and displays a warning when the [Tool | Analyse command](#)⁴⁶ is invoked.

5. [Is there a user creatable toolkit capability?](#)
[Is there a customized symbol capability?](#)
[Is there a way to create a library of customized symbols and common circuits?](#)

There are no immediate plans to implement user creatable toolkits. One alternative is to create a library of customized symbols and common circuits in one or more [Circuit Shop files](#)⁷⁵ and use the [edit command's](#)⁴³ [cut](#)⁴⁴ and [paste](#)⁴⁴ facility between diagrams.

Also, Circuit Shop allows you to create unlimited [analog](#)⁸¹ and [digital](#)⁸⁴ circuits inside [integrated circuit \(IC\)](#)⁸⁹ devices. The circuits inside ICs can also imbed additional ICs and thus very complex circuits can be created. This capability is sometimes called circuit macros in other programs. See [creating circuits inside integrated circuits](#).²⁰

A library example is the standard digital logic ICs, 7400 through 7449, contained in [L7400.CS1](#) which is included in the Circuit Shop distribution files. You can cut and paste the ICs from this library to your own circuits.

6. [How do I register Circuit Shop?](#)

You can register Circuit Shop by:

1. Sending the required registration fee by post office mail.
2. Web transaction using a credit card.

See [purchasing information](#).⁷ When the registration notification or mail is received, you will be sent a registration key.

7. [What Circuit Shop features become available after registration?](#)

The additional features that become available after registration are listed in [purchasing information](#).⁷

8. [How can a circuit be transferred to another application such as a word processor or a general graphics program?](#)

The [File | Output BMP file](#)⁴¹ draws the circuit in the currently active window into a bitmap file. The bitmap file can be imported to other applications.

Related topics:

[Technical support](#)¹⁰
[Topic tree](#)³

Purchasing Information

You may purchase Circuit Shop

- [by cheque or money order](#)⁸
- [by web transaction](#)⁹
- [by purchase order](#)⁹

On receipt of payment, you will be sent a registration key. The [File | Register](#)⁴¹ menu command and the [Registration dialog box](#)⁷² are then used to register your copy of Circuit Shop.

Registration entitles you to

- Free upgrades to new versions of Circuit Shop for a period of 2 years.
- [Technical support](#).¹⁰
- Load [Circuit Shop files](#)⁷⁵ which are greater than 30 days old.
- Create circuits containing greater than 20 devices. Note, the count includes devices inside [integrated circuits](#).⁸⁹
- Ability to [print](#)⁴⁰ diagrams.
- Ability to output diagrams to [BMP files](#)⁴¹ for import into other applications.
- Access advanced Circuit Shop features including:
 1. Ability to plot additional [frequency response](#)²⁷ information:
 - [Phase \(Degrees\)](#)
 - [Magnitude \(dB\)](#)
 - [Group Delay \(Seconds\)](#)

Note: Frequency response [Magnitude \(Volts\)](#) plots are available to non-registered users.

2. Ability to analyze circuits containing

- [Transformers](#)⁹⁴
- [Ideal operational amplifiers](#)⁸⁸
- [Dependent voltage and current sources](#)⁸⁴

using Circuit Shop's [sinusoidal steady state analysis](#)²⁵ and [frequency response](#)²⁷ graph generation capabilities.

3. Ability to use additional [device meter](#)²⁹ functions including ability to measure

- [Terminal](#)⁹³ [voltages](#).⁹⁵
- [Terminal](#)⁹³ -to-[terminal](#)⁹³ [voltage](#)⁹⁵ differences.
- [Power](#)⁹¹ dissipated by [resistors](#).⁹² [capacitors](#)⁸² and [inductors](#).⁸⁹

4. Ability to analyze circuits containing [diodes](#)⁸⁵ using Circuit Shop's [DC analysis](#)²² function.

Related topics:

[Technical support](#)¹⁰

[Warranty](#)¹⁰

Purchasing by Cheque or Money Order

To purchase Circuit Shop by cheque or money order, complete the following form and send to Cherrywood Systems at the indicated address. (To make a copy of the form, select the above Circuit Shop Help window [File | Print Topic](#) menu command.)

Registration price

- The USA registration price is **\$29 U.S.** and can be made by cheque or money order.
- The Canadian registration price is **\$39 Canadian** and can be made by cheque or money order.
- Outside of USA and Canada, the registration price is the equivalent of **\$29 U.S.** and can be made by international money order only.

On receipt of payment, you will be sent a registration key. If an e-mail address is included below, the key will be sent to the specified address.

NAME _____
COMPANY _____
STREET _____
CITY _____
STATE/PROV. _____ ZIP/P.C. _____
COUNTRY _____
TELEPHONE _____
E-MAIL _____

Product:	Price	Copies	Total
Circuit Shop	_____	x _____	= \$ _____

Make cheque payable to: Cherrywood Systems

Mail to: Cherrywood Systems
5143 Galway Dr.
Tsawwassen B.C.
Canada
V4M 3R4

Purchasing by Web Transaction

You may purchase Circuit Shop by credit card (Master Card, Visa, American Express or Discover) over the web by navigating to [DigiBuy](#) at

<http://www.digibuy.com>

From this page, to navigate to Circuit Shop's order page

- select [Shop DigiBuy](#)
- select [Alphabetical listing](#)
- select the letter [C](#) for [Circuit Shop](#)
- scroll down and select the [Circuit Shop](#) link

Or directly at

<http://www.digibuy.com/cgi-bin/product.html?93357317861>

The cost is [\\$29 U.S.](#) per copy.

The above pages can also be found via the Cherrywood Systems home page at

<http://ourworld.compuserve.com/homepages/Cherrywood/>

On notification of receipt of payment, you will be sent a registration key. The [File | Register](#)⁴¹ menu command and the [Registration dialog box](#)⁷² are then used to register your copy of Circuit Shop.

Purchasing by Purchase Order

Purchase orders are accepted from institutions and companies. Purchase orders should be sent to

Cherrywood Systems
5143 Galway Dr.
Tsawwassen B.C.
Canada
V4M 3R4

The cost is \$29 U.S. per copy and a minimum 4 copies plus 10% for shipping and handling.

Technical Support

If you have product questions or suggestions, you can contact the developers via e-mail at

Cherrywood@compuserve.com

Our web page is located at

<http://ourworld.compuserve.com/homepages/Cherrywood/>

Product suggestions from registered and unregistered users are always welcome. If you have any suggestions or comments which would make Circuit Shop a useful tool to you or in your environment, please send them along. We will analyze your request and attempt to schedule/add any feature that fits into the product vision and our development resources permit.

If you are having a problem with Circuit Shop, [frequently asked questions](#)⁵ may help.

Related topics:

[Purchasing information](#)⁷

[Warranty](#)¹⁰

Warranty

"Circuit Shop" is licensed without any warranty of merchantability, fitness of particular purpose, performance, or otherwise. All warranties are disclaimed. By using "Circuit Shop", you agree that neither Cherrywood Systems nor any of its employees, affiliates, owners, or other related parties will be liable to you or any third party for any use of (or inability to use) this software, or for any damages whatsoever, even if Cherrywood Systems and/or the authors are apprised of the possibility of such damages occurring. Cherrywood Systems and/or the authors assume no liability for losses or damages, of a physical, financial, or of whatever nature, direct or consequential, resulting from the use of, or purported use of "Circuit Shop" or any of the files in the package, for any purpose whatsoever.

You use "Circuit Shop" entirely at your own risk.

Starting and Exiting Circuit Shop

Starting Circuit Shop

Circuit Shop can be started from the:

- Program Manager
- File Manager
- Command Line

When you start Circuit Shop, it will open its Main Window.

Starting from the Program Manager

Like most Windows applications, you can start Circuit Shop by double-clicking on its icon. The location of the icon depends on how Circuit Shop was installed. If the default setup was used, the icon is in the Circuit Shop group.

Starting from the File Manager

Circuit Shop is started from the File Manager by double-clicking on [CIRC.EXE](#), or by highlighting it and pressing <Enter>. CIRC.EXE can be found in the drive and directory that was selected during installation. If the default setup was used, CIRC.EXE is in C:\CSHOP1.

Starting from the Command Line

To start Circuit Shop from the Windows command line:

1. Select ["File"](#) in the menubar, then select ["Run"](#).
2. Enter Circuit Shop's full filename path, i.e. Circuit Shop's drive and directory, followed by ["CIRC.EXE"](#). If the default setup was used, type ["C:\CSHOP1\CIRC.EXE"](#).
3. Click the OK Button or press <Enter>.

Exiting

Exit Circuit Shop like most Windows programs:

1. Select ["Exit"](#) in Circuit Shop's File Menu.
2. Double-click Circuit Shop's Main Window Control Box.
3. Press <Alt> + <F4>.
4. Select ["Exit"](#) in Circuit Shop's Main Window's Control Menu.

Creating and Editing Diagrams

The following topics describe Circuit Shop's diagram creation and editing capabilities:

[Creating a new diagram window](#)¹⁵

[Opening an existing diagram](#)¹⁸

[Adding devices or objects to a diagram](#)¹²

[Deleting devices or objects from a diagram](#)¹⁵

[Adding text objects to a diagram](#)¹³

[Selecting objects](#)¹⁸

[Modifying device values or other object attributes](#)¹⁶

[Moving devices or objects](#)¹⁷

[Rotating devices or objects](#)¹⁸

[Edit | Undo](#)⁴⁵ - [Redo](#)⁴⁵

[Edit | Cut](#)⁴⁴ - [Copy](#)⁴³ - [Paste](#)⁴⁴ - [Append](#)⁴³ - [Select all](#)⁴⁵

[Connecting devices - adding wires](#)¹⁴

[Adding¹² - moving¹⁶ - deleting a wire vertex¹⁵](#)

[Creating circuits inside integrated circuits²⁰](#)

[Viewing circuit voltage and current values - adding meters²⁰](#)

[Analysing a circuit¹⁹](#)

Adding a Vertex to a Wire or Line Object

To add a [vertex⁹⁵](#) to a [wire⁹⁵](#) or line object:



1. Using the mouse, choose the pointer icon on the [toolbar³⁷](#) or the [analog device toolkit⁵²](#).
2. Move the mouse onto the diagram over the wire or line object portion where the vertex is to be added.
3. Press the left mouse button and drag the wire or line object to the desired vertex location.
4. Release the mouse button.

Line vertices are placed on the current drawing grid.

[Wire⁹⁵](#) vertices are placed as follows

1. If the selected vertex location is within one grid unit of an adjacent vertex or wire end, the wire vertex will be automatically positioned so that the resulting wires are horizontal or vertical.
2. Otherwise, if the selected vertex location is not within one grid unit, the vertex is placed on the current drawing grid.

The size and visibility of the drawing grid are controlled using the [Tool | Drawing Grid command⁴⁸](#) and the [Edit Drawing Grid dialog box.⁶⁵](#)

Related topics:

[Moving a vertex¹⁶](#)

[Deleting a vertex¹⁵](#)

[Edit | Undo⁴⁵ - Redo⁴⁵](#)

[Creating and editing diagrams¹¹](#)

[Connecting devices - adding wires¹⁴](#)

[Menu commands³⁷](#)

[Device and drawing toolkits⁵¹](#)

Adding a Device or Object

To add a device or object to a diagram:

1. Ensure the device or object [toolkit⁵¹](#) is visible. [\(hint1\)⁷⁶](#)
2. Using the left mouse button, click a device or object icon on the toolkit.
3. Move the mouse onto the diagram to where the device or object is to be located.
4. Click the left mouse button to place the selected device or object on the diagram.

Devices and objects are centered on the current drawing grid. The size and visibility of the drawing grid are controlled using the [Tool | Drawing Grid command⁴⁸](#) and the [Edit Drawing Grid dialog box.⁶⁵](#)

Related topics:


[Edit | Undo⁴⁵ - Redo⁴⁵](#)

[Creating and editing diagrams¹¹](#)


[Menu commands³⁷](#)

Adding a Text Object

To add a text object to a diagram:

1. Ensure the [paint toolkit](#)⁵⁴ is visible. [\(hint2\)](#)⁷⁶
2. Using the mouse, choose  on the toolkit.
3. Move the mouse onto the diagram to where the text is to be located.
4. Click the mouse to place the text object on the diagram. The initial value of the text object will be "(empty)".

To modify a text object's value:


1. Using the mouse, choose the pointer icon  on the [toolbar](#)³⁷ or the [analog device toolkit](#).⁵²
2. Move the mouse onto the diagram over the object to be modified.
3. Double click the left mouse button to display the object's dialog box. Double clicking on a text object will open the [Edit Text dialog box](#).⁷⁰
4. Enter the desired text value and press OK.

Related topics:

[Edit | Undo](#)⁴⁵ - [Redo](#)⁴⁵
[Moving devices or objects](#)¹⁷
[Edit Text dialog box](#)⁷⁰
[Modifying object values and attributes](#)¹⁶
[Diagram annotations](#)¹⁵
[Creating and editing diagrams](#)¹¹
[Adding devices or objects to a diagram](#)¹²
[Menu commands](#)³⁷
[Device and drawing toolkits](#)⁵¹

Adding a Line Object


To add a straight line object to a diagram


1. Ensure the [paint toolkit](#)⁵⁴ is visible. [\(hint2\)](#)⁷⁶
2. Using the mouse, choose the straight line icon  on the toolkit.
3. Move the mouse onto the diagram over the desired start location of the line.
4. Press the left mouse button and drag the line to the desired end location of the line.
5. Release the mouse button.

Line vertices

[Vertices](#)⁹⁵ can be [added](#),¹² [moved](#)¹⁶ or [deleted](#)¹⁵ from a straight or curved line.

To add a curved line object to a diagram

1. Ensure the [paint toolkit](#)⁵⁴ is visible. [\(hint2\)](#)⁷⁶
2. Using the mouse, choose the curved line icon  on the toolkit.
3. Move the mouse onto the diagram over the desired start location of the line.
4. Press the left mouse button and drag the line to the desired end location of the line.
5. Release the mouse button.

6. Using the mouse, choose the pointer icon  on the [toolbar](#)³⁷ or the [analog device toolkit](#).⁵²
7. Move the mouse onto the diagram over the line object portion where the vertex is to be added.
8. Press the left mouse button and drag the line object to the desired vertex location.
9. Release the mouse button.
10. Repeat steps (6) through (9) to add as many vertices as desired. Circuit Shop draws a cubic spline curve for each set of 3 points in a line.

To move an entire line object




Detailed instructions on how to move an entire line object can be found in [moving an entire line object](#).¹⁸

Related topics:



[Edit | Undo](#)⁴⁵ - [Redo](#)⁴⁵
[Diagram annotations](#)¹⁵
[Creating and editing diagrams](#)¹¹
[Adding devices or objects to a diagram](#)¹²
[Moving devices or objects](#)¹⁷
[Modifying object values and attributes](#)¹⁶
[Menu commands](#)³⁷
[Device and drawing toolkits](#)⁵¹

Connecting Devices - Adding Wires and Connectors

Adding a wire to connect two devices:

1. Using the mouse, choose the wire icon  on the [toolbar](#)³⁷ or the [analog device toolkit](#).⁵²
2. Move the mouse onto the diagram over a device terminal. When Circuit Shop detects that the cursor is over a device terminal, the cursor symbol will change to a pointer .
3. Press and hold down the left mouse button over the device terminal.
4. Hold down the left mouse button and drag the wire to another device terminal. When Circuit Shop detects that the cursor is over a device terminal, the cursor symbol will change to a pointer .
5. Release the mouse button.

Adding a connector to connect multiple devices:

1. Using the mouse, choose the connector icon  on the [toolbar](#)³⁷ or the [analog device toolkit](#).⁵²
2. Move the mouse onto the diagram to where the connector is to be located and click the mouse to place the connector on the diagram.
3. Using the mouse, choose the wire icon  on the [toolbar](#)³⁷ or the [analog device toolkit](#).⁵²
4. Move the mouse onto the diagram over a device terminal to be connected to the connector object.
5. Press the left mouse button and drag the wire to the connector.
6. Release the mouse button.
7. Repeat steps (4) through (6) on the other devices to be connected to the connector object.

Related topics:

[Edit | Undo⁴⁵ - Redo⁴⁵](#)
[Creating and editing diagrams¹¹](#)
[Adding¹² - moving¹⁶ - deleting a wire vertex¹⁵](#)
[Menu commands³⁷](#)
[Device and drawing toolkits⁵¹](#)

Creating a New Diagram Window



Use **File New** on the [toolbar³⁷](#) or menu command [File | New³⁹](#) to create a new diagram window.

Related topics:

[Creating and editing diagrams¹¹](#)
[Menu commands³⁷](#)
[Device and drawing toolkits⁵¹](#)

Deleting a Vertex From a Wire or Line Object

To delete a [vertex⁹⁵](#) from a wire or line object:



1. Using the mouse, choose the pointer icon on the [toolbar³⁷](#) or the [analog device toolkit⁵²](#).
2. Move the mouse onto the diagram over the vertex to be deleted.
3. Press the left mouse button and drag the vertex so that the wire or line segments connected to the vertex form a straight line.
4. Release the mouse button. The vertex will be deleted from the wire.

Related topics:

[Edit | Undo⁴⁵ - Redo⁴⁵](#)
[Adding a vertex¹²](#)
[Moving a vertex¹⁶](#)
[Creating and editing diagrams¹¹](#)
[Connecting devices - adding wires¹⁴](#)
[Deleting devices or objects from a diagram¹⁵](#)
[Menu commands³⁷](#)
[Device and drawing toolkits⁵¹](#)

Deleting a Device or Object

To delete a device or object from a diagram:




1. Using the mouse, choose the pointer icon on the [toolbar³⁷](#) or the [analog device toolkit⁵²](#).
2. Move the mouse onto the diagram to the device or object to be deleted.
3. Click the mouse to select the device or object.
4. Use [Edit | Delete⁴⁴](#) menu command to delete the device or object.

Related topics:

[Edit | Undo⁴⁵ - Redo⁴⁵](#)
[Creating and editing diagrams¹¹](#)
[Menu commands³⁷](#)
[Device and drawing toolkits⁵¹](#)

Diagram Annotations

Circuit Shop allows annotations to be added to circuit diagrams. To add an annotation:

1. Ensure the [paint toolkit](#)⁵⁴ is visible. [\(hint2\)](#)⁷⁶
2. Using the mouse, choose the desired annotation. For example, choosing  on the paint toolkit will allow you to add a text annotation to the diagram.
3. Move the mouse onto the diagram to where the annotation is to be located.
4. Click the mouse to place the annotation object on the diagram.

See [adding text objects](#)¹³ for detailed instructions to add text annotations.


See [adding line objects](#)¹³ for detailed instructions to add line annotations.

Related topics:

[Moving devices or objects](#)¹⁷
[Modifying object values and attributes](#)¹⁶
[Creating and editing diagrams](#)¹¹
[Adding devices or objects to a diagram](#)¹²
[Menu commands](#)³⁷
[Device and drawing toolkits](#)⁵¹

Modifying Device or Object Attributes

Circuit Shop allows devices to be updated via [dialog boxes](#).⁶² To modify a device's value or attribute:


1. Using the mouse, choose the pointer icon  on the [toolbar](#)³⁷ or the [analog device toolkit](#).⁵²
2. Move the mouse onto the diagram over the device or object to be modified.
3. Double click the left mouse button to display the device or object's dialog box. For example, double clicking on a resistor will open the [Edit Device dialog box](#).⁶⁴

Related topics:

[Edit | Undo](#)⁴⁵ - [Redo](#)⁴⁵
[Creating and editing diagrams](#)¹¹
[Dialog boxes](#)⁶²
[Menu commands](#)³⁷
[Device and drawing toolkits](#)⁵¹

Moving a Wire or Line Object Vertex

To move a [wire](#)⁹⁵ or line object [vertex](#)⁹⁵:

1. Using the mouse, choose the pointer icon  on the [toolbar](#)³⁷ or the [analog device toolkit](#).⁵²
2. Move the mouse onto the diagram over the vertex to be moved.
3. Press the left mouse button and drag the vertex to the desired location.
4. Release the mouse button. The wire or line object will be redrawn with the vertex in its new location.

Line vertices are placed on the current drawing grid.

[Wire](#)⁹⁵ vertices are placed as follows

1. If the selected vertex location is within one grid unit of an adjacent vertex or wire end, the wire vertex will be automatically positioned so that the resulting wires are horizontal or vertical.
2. Otherwise, if the selected vertex location is not within one grid unit, the vertex is placed on the current drawing grid.

The size and visibility of the drawing grid are controlled using the [Tool | Drawing Grid command](#)⁴⁸ and the [Edit Drawing Grid dialog box](#).⁶⁵

Note: If the new vertex location causes the wire or line object to be straight, the vertex will be automatically deleted. See [deleting a vertex](#).¹⁵

Related topics:

[Edit | Undo](#)⁴⁵ - [Redo](#)⁴⁵

[Adding a vertex](#)¹²

[Creating and editing diagrams](#)¹¹

[Connecting devices - adding wires](#)¹⁴

[Menu commands](#)³⁷

[Device and drawing toolkits](#)⁵¹

Moving an Object

To move most devices or objects



1. Using the mouse, choose the pointer icon on the [toolbar](#)³⁷ or the [analog device toolkit](#).⁵²
2. Move the mouse onto the diagram over the device or object to be moved.
3. Press the left mouse button and drag the device to the new location.
4. Release the mouse button.

Devices and objects are centered on the current drawing grid. The size and visibility of the drawing grid are controlled using the [Tool | Drawing Grid command](#)⁴⁸ and the [Edit Drawing Grid dialog box](#).⁶⁵

To move multiple devices or objects

5. Use the mouse to select the devices or objects to be moved. See [selecting objects](#)¹⁸ for additional information.
6. Move the mouse onto the diagram over one of the selected devices or objects to be moved.
7. Press and hold the left mouse button down. A rectangle will be displayed enclosing the selected devices and objects.
8. Holding the left mouse button down, drag the enclosing rectangle to the desired location.
9. Release the mouse button.

To move objects with keyboard cursor keys

10. Use the mouse to select the devices or objects to be moved. See [selecting objects](#)¹⁸ for additional information.
11. Press one of the four keyboard cursor keys, [left arrow](#), [right arrow](#), [up arrow](#), or [down arrow](#). The selected objects will be moved by one x or y grid increment in the desired direction. The size and visibility of the drawing grid are controlled using the [Tool | Drawing Grid command](#)⁴⁸ and the [Edit Drawing Grid dialog box](#).⁶⁵

Alternatively, if the [Ctrl](#) key is held down at the same time as the cursor key is pressed, the selected objects will be moved by one pixel in the desired direction.

To move an entire line object

On line objects, the normal pointer operation is to add [vertices](#).⁹⁵ See [adding](#),¹² [moving](#)¹⁶ and [deleting a vertex](#).¹⁵ To move an entire line object, hold the **Shift** key and perform the operations listed above. See [moving entire line objects](#).¹⁸

Related topics:

[Edit | Undo](#)⁴⁵ - [Redo](#)⁴⁵
[Selecting objects](#)¹⁸
[Modifying device values or other object attributes](#)¹⁶
[Rotating devices or objects](#)¹⁸
[Creating and editing diagrams](#)¹¹
[Menu commands](#)³⁷
[Device and drawing toolkits](#)⁵¹

Moving a Line Object

To move an entire line object



1. Using the mouse, choose the pointer icon on the [toolbar](#)³⁷ or the [analog device toolkit](#).⁵²
2. Move the mouse onto the diagram over the line object to be moved.
3. Hold the **Shift** button down.
4. Press the left mouse button and drag the line to the new location.
5. Release the mouse button.

Related topics:

[Adding](#)¹² - [moving](#)¹⁶ - [deleting a line vertex](#)¹⁵
[Edit | Undo](#)⁴⁵ - [Redo](#)⁴⁵
[Selecting objects](#)¹⁸
[Modifying device values or other object attributes](#)¹⁶
[Moving devices or objects](#)¹⁷
[Rotating devices or objects](#)¹⁸
[Creating and editing diagrams](#)¹¹
[Menu commands](#)³⁷
[Device and drawing toolkits](#)⁵¹

Opening an Existing Diagram




Use **File Open** on the [toolbar](#)³⁷ or menu command [File | Open](#)³⁹ to invoke the [Select File dialog box](#).⁷² On successful completion of the dialog box, a new diagram window will be opened with an existing [circuit shop file](#).⁷⁵

Related topics:

[Creating and editing diagrams](#)¹¹
[Menu commands](#)³⁷
[Device and drawing toolkits](#)⁵¹
[Dialog boxes](#)⁶²

Rotating a Device

To rotate a device:

1. Using the mouse, choose the pointer icon  on the [toolbar](#)³⁷ or the [analog device toolkit](#).⁵²
2. Move the mouse onto the diagram over a device terminal.
3. Press the left mouse button and drag the device terminal to the new location.
4. Release the mouse button.

Related topics:

[Edit | Undo](#)⁴⁵ - [Redo](#)⁴⁵

[Creating and editing diagrams](#)¹¹


[Menu Commands](#)³⁷

[Toolbar commands](#)³⁷

[Device and drawing toolkits](#)⁵¹

Selecting Objects

To select an object

1. Using the mouse, choose the pointer icon  on the [toolbar](#)³⁷ or the [analog device toolkit](#).⁵²
2. Move the mouse onto the diagram over the device or object to be selected.
3. Click the left mouse button to select the object. The smallest object under the pointer will be selected and will be redrawn in its selected form. For example, devices will highlight their node locations. Any objects that were previously selected will be unselected.

To select multiple objects

4. Follow steps (1) and (2) above.
5. Hold down the [Shift](#) button and click the left mouse button to select the object. The selected object will be redrawn in its selected form. Any objects that were previously selected will remain selected.

Note, the select operation can be reversed, holding the [Shift](#) button down and clicking the left mouse button on a selected object will unselect the object.

To select multiple objects with a selection area

6. Follow step (1) above.
7. Move the mouse onto the diagram slightly left and slightly above the objects to be selected.
8. Hold the left mouse button down and drag the mouse to create a selection area rectangle which completely covers the objects to be selected.
9. Release the mouse button. The selected objects will be redrawn in their selected form.

Note, normally the selection area operation will unselect objects outside of the selection area. To maintain existing selections, hold the [Shift](#) button down while performing steps (7), (8) and (9).

To select all objects

10. Use [Edit | Select All](#)⁴⁵ menu command or the keyboard sequence [Ctrl+A](#) to select all objects. All objects will be redrawn in their selected form.

To unselect all objects

11. Follow step (1) above.
12. Move the mouse onto the diagram over an area with no objects.
13. Click the left mouse button. All previously selected objects will be redrawn in their normal form.

Related topics:

[Edit | Select All command](#)⁴⁵
[Edit | Cut command](#)⁴⁴
[Edit | Copy command](#)⁴³
[Edit | Append command](#)⁴³
[Edit | Delete command](#)⁴⁴
[Creating and editing diagrams](#)¹¹
[Menu commands](#)³⁷
[Toolbar commands](#)³⁷
[Device and drawing toolkits](#)⁵¹

Analysing a Circuit



Once a circuit has been constructed, use [Tool | Analyse](#)⁴⁶ menu command or [toolbar](#)³⁷ icon  Analyze to analyse the circuit.

Depending on the objects in the circuit, this command will invoke one of Circuit Shop's analysis functions:

- [DC analysis](#)²²
- [Sinusoidal steady state analysis](#)²⁵
- [Frequency response](#)²⁷
- [Digital analysis](#)³²

As a side effect of the analysis:

- [device meters](#)²⁹ are updated. See [DC analysis](#)²² and [sinusoidal steady state analysis](#)²⁵.
- [circuit analyzers](#)³⁰ are evaluated and generate [frequency response](#)²⁷ graphs.
- [digital sources](#)³³ and [logic gates](#)³⁴ and [flip-flops](#)³⁴ are evaluated, and [digital displays](#)³⁶ are updated. See [digital analysis](#)³².

Related topics:

[Circuit analysis help topics](#)²²
[Creating and editing diagrams](#)¹¹
[Viewing circuit voltage and current values](#)²⁰
[Circuit analysis help topics](#)²²
[Menu commands](#)³⁷
[Toolbar commands](#)³⁷
[Device and drawing toolkits](#)⁵¹

Viewing Circuit Voltage and Current Values

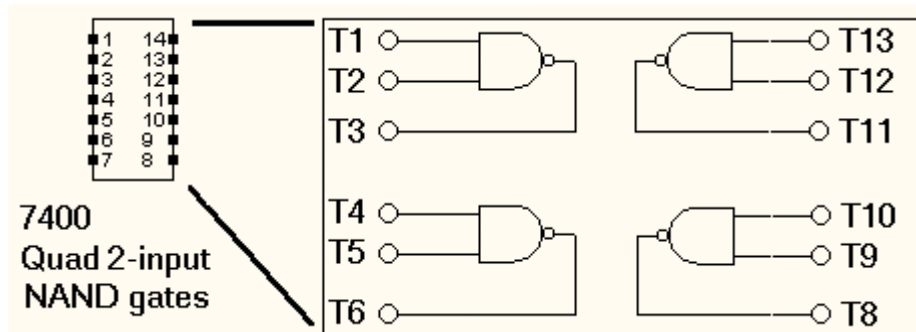
Circuit Shop provides the following meter types to view circuit voltage and current values.

- [Device meter](#)²⁹ provides information on how to add a meter to a diagram and link it to a device. A device meter can measure a device's [voltage](#),⁹⁵ [current](#),⁸⁴ [impedance](#)⁸⁸ and [power](#).⁹¹

Related topics:

[Analysing a circuit](#)¹⁹
[Tool | Analyse command](#)⁴⁶
[Creating and editing diagrams](#)¹¹

Creating Circuits Inside Integrated Circuits



Circuit Shop allows you to create unlimited [analog](#)⁸¹ and [digital](#)⁸⁴ circuits inside [integrated circuit \(IC\)](#)⁸⁹ devices. The circuits inside ICs can also include imbedded ICs, i.e. ICs inside ICs and thus very complex circuits can be created. This capability is sometimes called circuit macros in other programs.



ICs can be used in the following analysis functions.

- [DC analysis](#)²² - [supported devices](#)²³
- [Sinusoidal steady state analysis](#)²⁵ - [supported devices](#)²⁶
- [Frequency response](#)²⁷ - [supported devices](#)²⁶
- [Digital analysis](#)³² - [supported devices](#)³²


Note, devices inside the IC must be consistent with the analysis type. Devices that are not supported by the analysis type will [not](#) be used by the analysis function.

ICs can be created to hold industry standard circuits such as the digital logic 7400 series or "common" circuit components that you use in your application. The ICs can be stored in Circuit Shop [.CS1 files](#)⁷⁵ which allows you to create user specific IC libraries. You can use Circuit Shop's [Edit|Cut](#),⁴⁴ [Copy](#)⁴³ and [Paste](#)⁴⁴ commands to copy ICs within a diagram, and from one diagram (e.g. from a user specific IC library) to another diagram.

To add an integrated circuit to a diagram:

1. Ensure the [digital device toolkit](#)⁵¹ is visible. If the toolkit is not visible, use the [View|Digital Device Toolkit](#)⁴⁹ menu command or the [toolbar](#)³⁷ icon  to display it.
2. Using the mouse, click the [integrated circuit \(IC\)](#)⁸⁹ icon  on the [digital device toolkit](#)⁵¹.
3. Move the mouse onto the diagram where the IC is to be placed.
4. Click the mouse to place the IC on the diagram. [Adding devices](#)¹² provides additional details.

To open the integrated circuit's internal circuit window:

1. Using the mouse, choose the pointer icon  on the [toolbar](#)³⁷ or the [analog device toolkit](#)⁵².
2. Move the mouse onto the diagram over the [integrated circuit \(IC\)](#)⁸⁹.
3. Double click the left mouse button over the IC to open the [Edit IC dialog box](#).⁶⁶ This dialog box is where the device id, name, part number, number of side and top/bottom pins, and pin visibility are defined. This is also where the command to open the IC's internal circuit is located.

4. Press the [View circuit](#) button in the [Edit IC dialog box](#)⁶⁶ to open the IC's internal circuit diagram window. Normal Circuit Shop commands and graphical operations can be used to construct the IC's internal circuit in this diagram. The IC's internal circuit will be automatically saved when the surrounding circuit is saved.

To connect the IC's internal circuit to the outside world:



1. [Terminals](#)⁹³ are used to associate the IC pins to input/output points of the IC's internal circuit. For example, in the above diagram, pin 3 of the 7400 IC is associated with terminal T3 of the internal circuit. Terminal T3 is the output of one of the IC's [NAND gates](#).⁸² (Terminals can be found in the [terminal and plug toolkit](#)).⁵⁷
2. Select the [Show pins](#) and [Show pin numbers](#) check boxes in the [Edit IC dialog box](#)⁶⁶ to help connect wires to the correct IC pin in the parent circuit.

Related topics:

[Creating and editing diagrams](#)¹¹
[Connecting devices - adding wires](#)¹⁴
[Menu commands](#)³⁷
[Device and drawing toolkits](#)⁵¹

Circuit Analysis Help Topics

Circuit Shop contains the following circuit analysis capabilities:

- [DC analysis](#)²² ([supported devices](#))²³
- [Sinusoidal steady state analysis](#)²⁵ ([supported devices](#))²⁶
- [Frequency response](#)²⁷ ([supported devices](#))²⁶
- [Digital analysis](#)³² ([supported devices](#))³²

Device meters²⁹

DC analysis and sinusoidal steady state analysis capabilities use [device meters](#).²⁹ A device meter's measured/displayed [voltage](#)⁹⁵ and [current](#)⁸⁴ values are set when a circuit is [analysed](#).⁴⁶

Circuit analyzers³⁰

Frequency response capability uses [circuit analyzers](#).³⁰ A frequency response plot is generated when a circuit is [analysed](#).⁴⁶



Use [Analyze](#) on the [toolbar](#)³⁷ or menu command [Tool|Analyze](#)⁴⁶ to analyse a circuit.

Related topics:

[Creating and editing diagrams](#)¹¹

[Topic tree](#)³

[Tutorial topic tree](#)²⁰³

DC Analysis

[DC or direct current](#)⁸⁶ analysis allows you to determine circuit [voltages](#)⁹⁵ and [currents](#)⁸⁴ in circuits composed of

- [resistors](#)⁹²
- [batteries](#)⁸²
- [diodes](#)⁸⁵
- [integrated circuits](#)⁸⁹ or ICs composed of the above devices

See [supported devices](#)²³ for a full list of devices supported by Circuit Shop's DC analysis capability.

Diode analysis

[Diode model](#)⁸⁵ describes how diodes are modelled by Circuit Shop's DC Analysis function. Circuit Shop uses an iterative analysis approach when diodes are part of a circuit. It first assumes a forward bias state for all diodes. The circuit is analyzed and voltages across the diodes are compared to the model state voltage requirements. If the voltage is not consistent with the model state, a new state is selected and the circuit is re-analyzed. This process is continued until no state changes occur or the maximum number of iterations is reached. Note: depending on the configuration, some diode circuits may not converge to a solution. After a solution is found, one of the following bias state characters is displayed beside the diode.

F - Forward bias (on).

R - Reverse bias (off).

B - Breakdown bias.

Steps to perform DC analysis

1. Open a diagram window, add circuit devices, orient and connect as desired. See

[Creating a new diagram window](#)¹⁵

[View | Analog Device Toolkit](#)⁴⁹
[Adding](#)¹² - [moving](#)¹⁷ - [rotating devices](#)¹⁸
[Connecting devices](#)¹⁴

- Using the [Edit Device dialog box](#),⁶⁴ set circuit device values. To open the dialog box, move the mouse onto the diagram over the device or object to be modified and double click the left mouse button. See also [modifying device values](#).¹⁶



- Add one or more [device meters](#).²⁹ Using the [Edit Meter dialog box](#),⁶⁸ select the meter type, display format and link to the desired circuit devices. To open the dialog box, move the mouse onto the diagram over the device meter to be modified and double click the left mouse button.



- Use [Analyze](#) on the [toolbar](#)³⁷ or menu command [Tool | Analyze](#)⁴⁶ to analyse the circuit. As a side effect, device meters are updated. See also [analysing a circuit](#).¹⁹

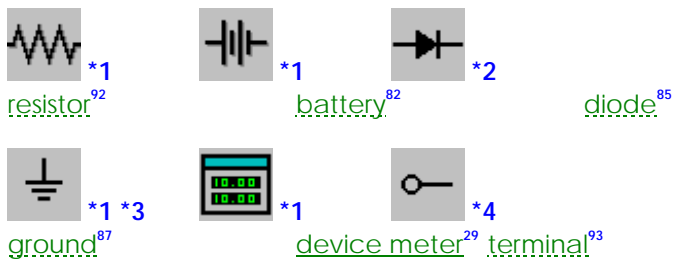
A detailed circuit construction example for a simple circuit can be found in [Ohm's law demonstration circuit construction](#).²⁰⁹

Related topics:

[Circuit analysis help topics](#)²²
[Sinusoidal steady state analysis](#)²⁵
[Creating and editing diagrams](#)¹¹
[Topic tree](#)³
[Tutorial topic tree](#)²⁰³

DC Analysis Supported Devices

Circuit Shop supports [direct current](#)⁸⁶ (DC) circuit analysis with the following devices.



- *1 These devices can be found on the [Analog device toolkit](#).⁵²



Use [AnalogKit](#) on the [toolbar](#)³⁷ or menu command [View | Analog device toolkit](#)⁴⁹ to display or dismiss this toolkit.

- *2 [Diodes](#)⁸⁵ can be found on the [diode toolkit](#)⁵⁶ which is a sub-toolkit of the analog device toolkit.



Use [...](#) on the analog device toolkit to open the diode toolkit.

- *3 [Earth](#)⁸⁷ and [chassis ground](#)⁸⁷ can also be found on the [ground toolkit](#)⁵⁶ which is a sub-toolkit of the analog device toolkit.



Use ... on the analog device toolkit to open the ground toolkit.

*4

[Terminals](#)⁹³ can be found on the [terminal & plug toolkit](#)⁵⁷ which is a sub-toolkit of the analog device toolkit.



Use ... on the analog device toolkit to open the terminal toolkit.



DC analysis also supports [integrated circuits](#)⁸⁹ or ICs containing circuits composed of the above device types and can include imbedded ICs, i.e. ICs inside ICs. ICs with devices not shown above, will not be used by the [DC analysis](#)²² function. ICs can be found on the [digital device toolkit](#).⁵¹ See [creating circuits inside integrated circuits](#).²⁰

Related topics:

[DC analysis](#)²²

[Circuit analysis help topics](#)²²

[Creating and editing diagrams](#)¹¹

[Topic tree](#)³

[Tutorial topic tree](#)²⁰³

Sinusoidal Steady State Analysis

Sinusoidal steady state analysis allows you to determine [alternating current \(AC\)](#)⁸¹ [voltages](#)⁹⁵ and [currents](#)⁸⁴ in circuits composed of


- [resistors](#)⁹²
- [inductors](#)⁸⁹
- [capacitors](#)⁸²
- [transformers](#)⁹⁴
- [AC voltage sources](#)⁸¹
- [AC current sources](#)⁸¹
- [dependent voltage and current sources](#)⁸⁴
- [ideal operational amplifiers](#)⁸⁸
- [integrated circuits](#)⁸⁹ or ICs composed of the above devices


See [supported devices](#)²⁶ for a full list of devices supported by Circuit Shop's sinusoidal steady state analysis capability.

Steps to perform sinusoidal steady state analysis

1. Open a diagram window, add circuit devices (see chart below for supported devices), orient and connect as desired. See [Creating a new diagram window](#)¹⁵
[View | Analog Device Toolkit](#)⁴⁹
[Adding](#)¹² - [moving](#)¹⁷ - [rotating devices](#)¹⁸
[Connecting devices](#)¹⁴
2. Using the [Edit Device dialog box](#)⁶⁴ set values for [resistors](#)⁹² [capacitors](#)⁸² and [inductors](#)⁸⁹. To open the dialog box, move the mouse onto the diagram over the device or object to be modified and double click the left mouse button. See also [modifying device values](#)¹⁶.
3. Using the [Edit Source dialog box](#)⁶⁹ set magnitude, phase and frequency values for [AC voltage](#)⁸¹ and [AC current sources](#)⁸¹. To open the dialog box, move the mouse onto the diagram over the source to be modified and double click the left mouse button. See also [modifying device values](#)¹⁶.

Note: The circuit [frequency](#)⁸⁷ should only be set on one source per circuit.

4. Add one or more  [device meters](#)²⁹. Using the [Edit Meter dialog box](#)⁶⁸ select the meter type, display format and link to the desired circuit devices. To open the dialog box, move the mouse onto the diagram over the device meter to be modified and double click the left mouse button. See also [modifying device values](#)¹⁶.

5. Use  Analyze on the [toolbar](#)³⁷ or menu command [Tool | Analyse](#)⁴⁶ to analyse the circuit. As a side effect, device meters are updated. See also [analysing a circuit](#)¹⁹.

A detailed circuit construction example for a simple circuit can be found in [Ohm's law demonstration circuit construction](#)²⁰⁹.

Related topics:

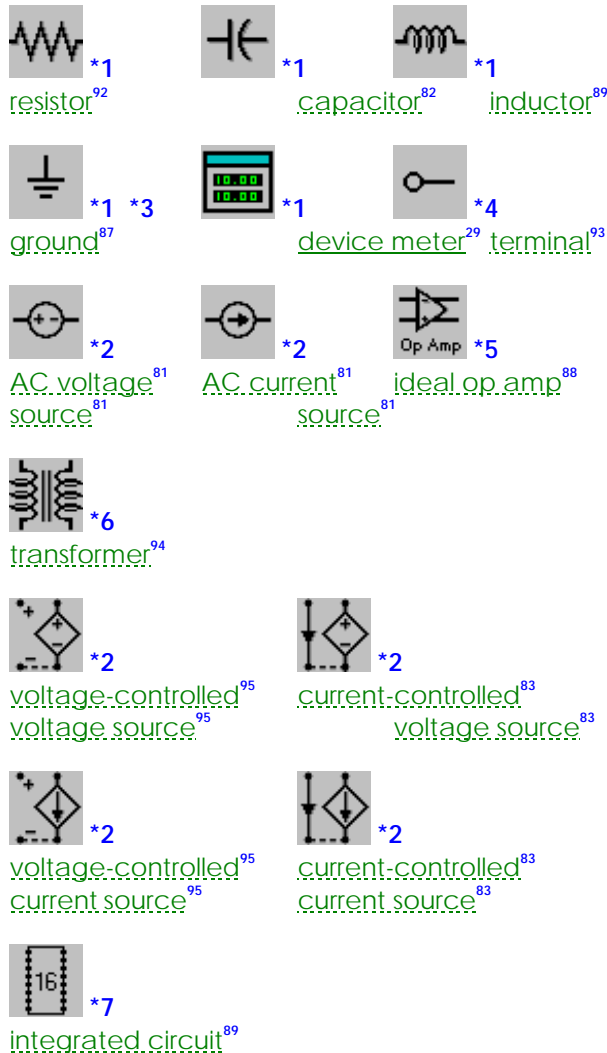
[Circuit analysis help topics](#)²²

[DC analysis](#)²²

[Frequency response](#)²⁷

Sinusoidal Steady State Analysis Supported Devices

Circuit Shop supports sinusoidal steady state circuit analysis with the following devices



- *1 These devices can be found on the [analog device toolkit](#).⁵²



Use **AnalogKit** on the [toolbar](#)³⁷ or menu command [View | Analog device toolkit](#)⁴⁹ to display or dismiss this toolkit.

- *2 These devices can be found on the [source toolkit](#)⁵⁸ which is a sub-toolkit of the analog device toolkit.



Use **...** on the analog device toolkit to open the source toolkit.

- *3 [Earth](#)⁸⁷ and [chassis.ground](#)⁸⁷ can also be found on the [ground toolkit](#)⁵⁶ which is a sub-toolkit of the analog device toolkit.



Use **...** on the analog device toolkit to open the ground toolkit.

*4 [Terminals](#)⁹³ can be found on the [terminal & plug toolkit](#)⁵⁷ which is a sub-toolkit of the analog device toolkit.



Use ... on the analog device toolkit to open the terminal toolkit.

*5 [Ideal operational amplifiers](#)⁸⁸ can be found on the [miscellaneous device toolkit](#)⁶¹ which is a sub-toolkit of the analog device toolkit.



Use Misc... on the analog device toolkit to open the miscellaneous device toolkit.

*6 [Transformers](#)⁹⁴ can be found on the [inductor toolkit](#)⁶⁰ which is a sub-toolkit of the analog device toolkit.



Use ... on the analog device toolkit to open the inductor toolkit.

*7 [Integrated circuits](#)⁸⁹ or ICs can be found on the [digital device toolkit](#)⁵¹. The [sinusoidal steady state analysis](#)²⁵ function supports ICs composed of any of the above devices and can include imbedded ICs, i.e. ICs inside ICs. ICs with devices not shown above, will not be used by the analysis function. See [creating circuits inside integrated circuits](#).²⁰

Related topics:

[Sinusoidal steady state analysis](#)²⁵

[Frequency response](#)²⁷

[Circuit analysis help topics](#)²²

[Creating and editing diagrams](#)¹¹

[Topic tree](#)³

[Tutorial topic tree](#)²⁰³

Frequency Response

Circuit Shop's frequency response capability allows you to graphically plot an [alternating current \(AC\)](#)⁸¹ circuit's [voltage](#)⁹⁵ magnitude and [phase](#)⁹¹ at arbitrary locations in a circuit. Circuit Shop can generate the following plot types:

- magnitude (volts) vs frequency
- phase (degrees) vs frequency
- magnitude (dB) vs frequency
- group delay (seconds) vs frequency

Plots can be in the following forms:

- linear vs linear
- linear vs logarithmic
- logarithmic vs linear
- logarithmic vs logarithmic

Also, each axis can be independently scaled either manually or automatically. A full description of Circuit Shop's frequency response capability can be found in [Edit Analyzer dialog box](#).⁶²

See [supported devices](#)²⁶ for a full list of devices supported by Circuit Shop's frequency response capability.

A detailed circuit construction example for a simple resistor-inductor-capacitor (RLC) circuit can be found in [detailed instructions](#).²⁶⁶ This circuit uses Circuit Shop's frequency response capability to demonstrate an RLC circuit's [resonant frequency](#).⁹²

Steps to generate a frequency response graph

1. Create a circuit. Open a diagram window, add circuit devices (see chart below for supported devices), orient and connect as desired. See

[Creating a new diagram window](#)¹⁵

[View | Analog Device Toolkit](#)⁴⁹

[Adding](#)¹² - [moving](#)¹⁷ - [rotating devices](#)¹⁸

[Connecting devices](#)¹⁴



While drawing the circuit, be sure to add one or more [terminals](#)⁹³ where the frequency response is to be measured.



Also, while drawing the circuit, be sure to add one or more [circuit analyzers](#)³⁰ to control the generation of frequency response graphs.

2. Using the [Edit Device dialog box](#),⁶⁴ set values for [resistors](#),⁹² [capacitors](#),⁸² [inductors](#),⁸⁹ [terminals](#),⁹³ and other circuit devices. To open the dialog box, move the mouse onto the diagram over the device or object to be modified and double click the left mouse button. See also [modifying device values](#).¹⁶

Note: To allow [circuit analyzers](#)³⁰ to link to the correct circuit location, ensure the [terminal\(s\)](#)⁹³ have defined device ids.

3. Using the [Edit Source dialog box](#),⁶⁹ set magnitude, phase and frequency values for [AC voltage](#)⁸¹ and [AC current sources](#).⁸¹ To open the dialog box, move the mouse onto the diagram over the source to be modified and double click the left mouse button. See also [modifying device values](#).¹⁶
4. Using the [Edit Analyzer dialog box](#),⁶² set:
 - the analyzer name
 - analyzer type, i.e. [frequency response](#)
 - terminal id, i.e. the frequency response measurement point
 - frequency minimum, maximum and calculation points per decade
 - output plot type, e.g. [Magnitude \(Volts\)](#) or [Phase \(Degrees\)](#)

To open the dialog box, move the mouse onto the diagram over the analyzer object to be modified and double click the left mouse button. See also [modifying device values](#).¹⁶

Notes:

- 1) The terminal id specified in the [circuit analyzer](#)³⁰ must be the same as the [terminal](#)⁹³ device id specified in step (2) above.
- 2) The greater the number of calculation points per decade, the smoother the output graph and the longer the analysis will take.
- 3) If multiple plot types, e.g. both [Magnitude \(Volts\)](#) and [Phase \(Degrees\)](#) are desired, place 2 [circuit analyzer](#)³⁰ objects on the diagram and specify Plot type: [Magnitude \(Volts\)](#) on one and Plot type: [Phase \(Degrees\)](#) on the other.
- 4) Non-registered users can only generate frequency response graphs with Plot type: [Magnitude \(Volts\)](#). See [purchasing information](#).⁷



5. Use **Analyze** on the [toolbar](#)³⁷ or menu command [Tool | Analyze](#)⁴⁶ to analyse the circuit. After the analysis is complete, a frequency response graph will be displayed. See also [analysing a circuit](#).¹⁹

To print a frequency response

1. After the frequency response graph has been generated, ensure the graph window is in focus, i.e. it is the active window. To make it the active window, single click the mouse somewhere over the graph window.
2. Use [menu command](#)³⁷ [File | Print](#)⁴⁰ or [File | Print preview](#)⁴¹ to print or preview respectively, the frequency response.

Related topics:

[Circuit analysis help topics](#)²²

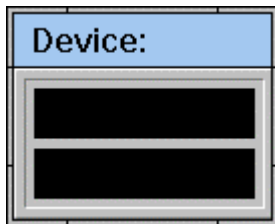
[Sinusoidal steady state analysis](#)²⁵

[DC analysis](#)²²

[Creating and editing diagrams](#)¹¹

[Topic tree](#)³

[Tutorial topic tree](#)²⁰³




Device Meter

Device meters support [DC analysis](#)²² and [sinusoidal steady state analysis](#).²⁵ A device meter can be used to view [resistor](#),⁹² [capacitor](#),⁸² and [inductor](#),⁸⁹ [voltage](#),⁹⁵ [current](#),⁸⁴ and [impedance](#),⁸⁸ and [power](#).⁹¹

Device meters can also measure [terminal](#),⁹³ and [terminal](#)⁹³-to-[terminal](#)⁹³ [voltage](#).⁹⁵


Various display formats are supported, including magnitude and phase in degrees or radians, and real and imaginary phasor. A full description of the measurement capabilities and supported display formats can be found in [Edit Meter dialog box](#).⁶⁸

To add a device meter to the diagram

1. Ensure the [analog device toolkit](#)⁵² is visible. ([hint1](#)).⁷⁶
2. Using the mouse, click the meter icon  on the toolkit.
3. Move the mouse onto the diagram to where the meter is to be placed.
4. Click the mouse to place the meter on the diagram. [Adding objects](#)¹² provides additional details.

To link the meter to a device



1. Using the mouse, click the pointer icon  on the [toolbar](#)³⁷ or the [analog device toolkit](#).⁵²
2. Move the mouse onto the diagram over the meter.
3. Double click the mouse on the meter to open the [Edit Meter dialog box](#).⁶⁸ Additional details on changing device values can be found in [modifying object values](#).¹⁶
4. To link the meter to a device, select the device type and enter the device's id.

To set device meter values

A device meter's measured [voltage](#)⁹⁵ and [current](#)⁸⁴ values are set when a circuit is [analysed](#).⁴⁶



Use **Analyze** on the [toolbar](#)³⁷ or menu command [Tool| Analyze](#)⁴⁶ to analyse the circuit.

Related topics:

[Analysing a circuit](#)¹⁹

[Circuit analysis help topics](#)²²

[DC analysis](#)²²

[Sinusoidal steady state analysis](#)²⁵

[Frequency response](#)²⁷

[Viewing circuit voltage and current values](#)²⁰

[Creating and editing diagrams](#)¹¹


[Tool| Analyze command](#)⁴⁶



Circuit Analyzer



Circuit analyzers support the generation of [frequency response](#)²⁷ graphs. A description of a circuit analyzer's capabilities and supported output graph types can be found in [Edit Analyzer dialog box](#).⁶²

To add a circuit analyzer to the diagram


1. Ensure the [analog device toolkit](#)⁵² is visible. ([hint1](#))⁷⁶
2. Using the mouse, click the analyzer icon  on the toolkit.
3. Move the mouse onto the diagram to where the analyzer is to be placed.
4. Click the mouse to place the analyzer on the diagram. [Adding objects](#)¹² provides additional details.

To add a terminal to the circuit

Analyzers measure circuits at [terminals](#).⁹³ Before a frequency response (or other analysis) graph can be generated, one or more terminals must be added to the circuit.

1. Ensure the [analog device toolkit](#)⁵² is visible. ([hint1](#))⁷⁶
2. Using the mouse, click  on the analog device toolkit to display the [terminal & plug sub-toolkit](#).⁵⁷
3. Using the mouse, click  on the sub-toolkit to select a terminal object.
4. Move the mouse onto the diagram to where the terminal is to be placed.
5. Click the mouse to place the terminal on the diagram. [Adding objects](#)¹² provides additional details.
6. Connect the terminal to a desired point in the circuit. See [moving devices or objects](#)¹⁷ and [connecting devices - adding wires](#)¹⁴ for additional details.

To link the analyzer to a terminal

1. Using the mouse, click the pointer icon  on the [toolbar](#)³⁷ or the [analog device toolkit](#).⁵²
2. Move the mouse onto the diagram over the analyzer.
3. Double click the mouse on the analyzer to open the [Edit Analyzer dialog box](#).⁶²

4. To link the analyzer to a terminal, enter the terminal's id.
5. While the dialog box is open, you may set other analyzer values or use Circuit Shop's defaults.

To analyze the circuit



Use **Analyze** on the [toolbar](#)³⁷ or menu command [Tool | Analyze](#)⁴⁶ to analyse the circuit. For example, if selected in the [edit analyzer dialog box](#),⁶² a [frequency response](#)²⁷ graph is generated when a circuit is analysed.

Related topics:

[Analysing a circuit](#)¹⁹

[Circuit analysis help topics](#)²²

[DC analysis](#)²²

[Sinusoidal steady state analysis](#)²⁵

[Frequency response](#)²⁷

[Digital analysis](#)³²

[Viewing circuit voltage and current values](#)²⁰

[Creating and editing diagrams](#)¹¹

[Tool | Analyze command](#)⁴⁶

Digital Analysis

Digital analysis allows you to analyse [digital circuits](#)⁸⁴ composed of:

- [Digital sources](#)³³
([logic level 0](#)⁸⁵, [logic level 1](#)⁸⁵ and [switch](#))⁸⁵
- [Logic gates](#)³⁴
([AND](#)⁸², [OR](#)⁹¹, [NOT](#)⁹⁰, [EXCLUSIVE-OR](#)⁸⁶, [NAND](#)⁸², [NOR](#)⁹¹ and [EXCLUSIVE-NOR](#))⁸⁶
- [Flip-flops](#)³⁴
- [Digital displays](#)³⁶
([lamp](#)⁸⁴, [seven segment](#))⁸⁵
- [Integrated circuits](#)⁸⁹ or ICs composed of the above devices

See [supported devices](#)³² for a full list of devices supported by Circuit Shop's digital analysis capability.

Steps to perform digital analysis

1. Open a diagram window, add circuit devices, orient and connect as desired. See [Creating a new diagram window](#)¹⁵, [View | Digital Device Toolkit](#)⁴⁹, [Adding](#)¹² - [moving](#)¹⁷ - [rotating devices](#)¹⁸, [Connecting devices](#)¹⁴

Note, you must include at least one [digital source](#)³³ in the circuit diagram to make Circuit Shop execute its digital analysis function when the [Analyse command](#)⁴⁶ is invoked.



2. Use [Analyze](#) on the [toolbar](#)³⁷ or menu command [Tool | Analyse](#)⁴⁶ to analyse the circuit. During the analysis, [digital sources](#)³³ and [logic gates](#)³⁴ and [flip-flops](#)³⁴ are evaluated, and [digital displays](#)³⁶ are updated. Also, [wires](#)⁹⁵ that are [HIGH](#) or logic level [1](#) are highlighted.



The digital analysis function is also directly invoked by a single mouse click on a [digital source switch](#)⁸⁵.

A detailed circuit construction example for a simple circuit can be found in [Logic gate demonstration circuit construction](#).²⁸⁸

Related topics:

[Creating circuits inside integrated circuits](#)²⁰
[Circuit analysis help topics](#)²²
[Creating and editing diagrams](#)¹¹
[Topic tree](#)³
[Tutorial topic tree](#)²⁰³

Digital Analysis Supported Devices

Circuit Shop supports [digital analysis](#)³² with the following devices



[AND gate](#)⁸²



[NAND gate](#)⁸²



[OR.gate](#)⁹¹



[EXCLUSIVE-OR.gate](#)⁸⁶

[NOR.gate](#)⁹¹



[EXCLUSIVE-NOR.gate](#)⁸⁶



[NOT.gate](#)⁹⁰



[Digital source switch](#)⁸⁵



[Level 0 source](#)⁸⁵



[Level 1 source](#)⁸⁵



[Digital display lamp](#)⁸⁴



[Seven segment display](#)⁸⁵



[Integrated circuit](#)⁸⁹



[Flip-flop](#)³⁴

These devices can be found on the [digital device toolkit](#).⁵¹



Use DigitalKit on the [toolbar](#)³⁷ or menu command [View | Digital device toolkit](#)⁴⁹ to display or dismiss this toolkit.

The [digital analysis](#)³² function supports [integrated circuits](#)⁸⁹ or ICs composed of any of the above devices and can include imbedded ICs, i.e. ICs inside ICs. ICs with devices not shown above, will not be used by the analysis function. See [creating circuits inside integrated circuits](#).²⁰

Related topics:

[Digital sources](#)³³

[Logic gates](#)³⁴

[Flip-flops](#)³⁴

[Digital displays](#)³⁶

[Circuit analysis help topics](#)²²

[Creating and editing diagrams](#)¹¹

[Topic tree](#)³

[Tutorial topic tree](#)²⁰³

Digital Source [\(toolkit\)](#)⁵¹

Digital sources supply **LOW** or **HIGH** signals (logic level 0 or 1 respectively) to [digital circuits](#).⁸⁴

Circuit Shop supports [digital analysis](#)³² with the following digital sources



[Level 0 source](#)⁸⁵



[Level 1 source](#)⁸⁵



[Digital source switch](#)⁸⁵

These devices can be found on the [digital device toolkit](#).⁵¹



Use DigitalKit on the [toolbar](#)³⁷ or menu command [View | Digital device toolkit](#)⁴⁹ to display or dismiss this toolkit.

Related topics:

[Circuit analysis help topics](#)²²

[Creating and editing diagrams](#)¹¹

[Topic tree](#)³

[Tutorial topic tree](#)²⁰³

Logic Gate [\(toolkit\)](#)⁵¹ [\(dialog box\)](#)⁶⁷

Logic gates evaluate **LOW** and **HIGH** input signals (logic level 0 or 1 respectively) to produce a **LOW** or **HIGH** output signal in [digital circuits](#).⁸⁴

Circuit Shop supports [digital analysis](#)³² with the following logic gates



[AND gate](#)⁸²



[NAND gate](#)⁸²



[OR gate](#)⁹¹



[NOR gate](#)⁹¹



[EXCLUSIVE-OR gate](#)⁸⁶



[EXCLUSIVE-NOR gate](#)⁸⁶



[NOT gate](#)⁹⁰

These devices can be found on the [digital device toolkit](#).⁵¹



Use DigitalKit on the [toolbar](#)³⁷ or menu command [View | Digital device toolkit](#)⁴⁹ to display or dismiss this toolkit.

The number of inputs on a [logic gate](#)³⁴ can be changed using the [Edit Logic Gate dialog box](#).⁶⁷ [\(hint5\)](#)⁷⁶ To open the dialog box, move the mouse onto the diagram over the device to be modified and double click the left mouse button. See also [modifying device values](#).¹⁶

Related topics:

[Circuit analysis help topics](#)²²

[Creating and editing diagrams](#)¹¹

[Topic tree](#)³

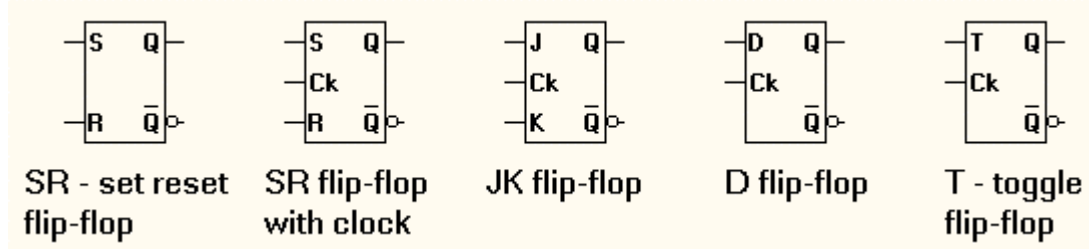
[Tutorial topic tree](#)²⁰³



Flip-Flop (toolkit)⁵¹ (dialog box)⁶⁵

Flip-flops provide memory elements in [digital circuits](#).⁸⁴ Using their stored state, flip-flops evaluate **LOW** and **HIGH** input signals (logic level 0 or 1 respectively) to produce a **LOW** or **HIGH** output signal **Q** and a complimented (i.e. opposite) output signal $\sim Q$.

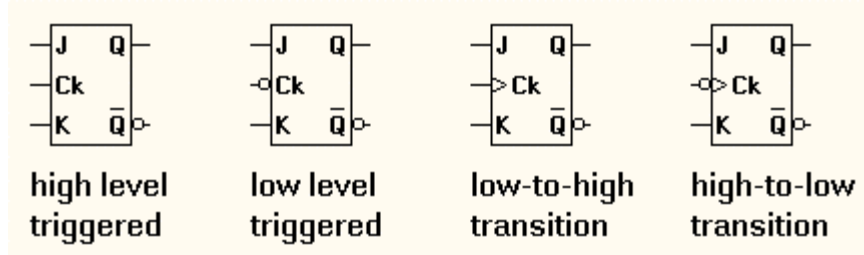
Flip-flop types Circuit Shop supports [digital analysis](#)³² with the following flip-flop types:



The [truth table](#)⁹⁴ for each flip-flop type is shown below.

SR	SR w Clock	JK w Clock	D w Clock	T w Clock
S R Q	S R Q-new	J K Q-new	D Q-new	T Q-new
=====	=====	=====	=====	=====
0 0 ?	0 0 Q-prev	0 0 Q-prev	0 0	0 Q-prev
0 1 0	0 1 0	0 1 0	1 1	1 $\sim Q$ -prev
1 0 1	1 0 1	1 0 1		
1 1 ?	1 1 ?	1 1 $\sim Q$ -prev		

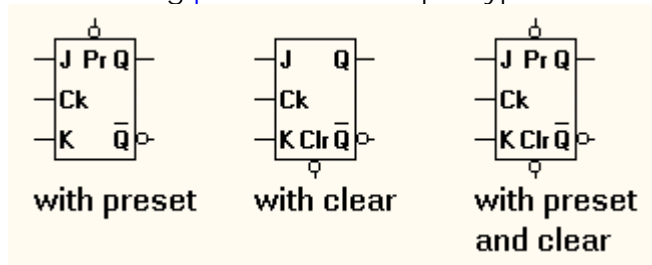
Clock input Flip-flops are enabled with **clock** inputs. I.e. if a flip-flop has a **clock** input, the output **Q** will only change if the **clock** is enabled. Circuit Shop supports the following **clock** types:



Preset and clear inputs Flip-flops can be initialized to **HIGH** or **LOW** output values by using **preset** or **clear** inputs respectively.

- If a flip-flop has a **preset** input and it is enabled, the output **Q** will be set to **HIGH**.
- If a flip-flop has a **clear** input and is enabled, the output **Q** will be set to **LOW**.

Preset and **clear** inputs are enabled when they are set to **LOW**. Flip-flops can be configured with the following **preset** or **clear** input types:



Flip-flops can be found on the [digital device toolkit](#).⁵¹



Use **DigitalKit** on the [toolbar](#)³⁷ or menu command [View | Digital device toolkit](#)⁴⁹ to display or dismiss this toolkit.

The flip-flop type, outputs, clock type, preset and clear attributes can be changed using the [Edit Flip-flop dialog box](#).⁶⁵ ([hint](#))⁷⁷ To open the dialog box, move the mouse onto the diagram over the device to be modified and double click the left mouse button. See also [modifying device values](#).¹⁶

Related topics:

[Circuit analysis help topics](#)²²

[Creating and editing diagrams](#)¹¹

[Topic tree](#)³

[Tutorial topic tree](#)²⁰³

Digital Display (toolkit)⁵¹

Digital displays convert input **LOW** and **HIGH** signals (logic levels **0** and **1** respectively) into visual representations in [digital circuits](#).⁸⁴

Circuit Shop supports [digital analysis](#)³² with the following digital displays



[Digital display lamp](#)⁸⁴



[Seven segment display](#)⁸⁵

These devices can be found on the [digital device toolkit](#).⁵¹



Use **DigitalKit** on the [toolbar](#)³⁷ or menu command [View | Digital device toolkit](#)⁴⁹ to display or dismiss this toolkit.

Related topics:

[Circuit analysis help topics](#)²²

[Creating and editing diagrams](#)¹¹

[Topic tree](#)³

[Tutorial topic tree](#)²⁰³

Menu Commands

The menu bar at the top of the Circuit Shop main window provides access to the menus. To go to the menu bar, press F10 or click anywhere on it. You can choose any of the following commands on the menu bar:

[File commands](#)³⁹

[Edit commands](#)⁴³

[View commands](#)⁴⁹

[Tool commands](#)⁴⁶

[Help commands](#)⁴⁹

Related topics:

[Toolbar commands](#)³⁷

Toolbar Commands

The toolbar at the top of the Circuit Shop main window provides quick access to common menu commands. It also provides pointer, [wire](#)⁹⁵ and [connector](#)⁸³ tools. To execute a toolbar command, click the mouse on the desired icon. You can choose any of the following commands on the toolbar:



File New [File | New command](#)³⁹



File Open [File | Open command](#)³⁹



File Save [File | Save command](#)³⁹



Save as [File | Save as command](#)⁴⁰



Analyze [Tool | Analyse command](#)⁴⁶



Digital Kit [View | Digital device toolkit command](#)⁴⁹



Analog Kit [View | Analog device toolkit command](#)⁴⁹



Paint Kit [View | Paint toolkit command](#)⁴⁹



Pen Size [Tool | Pen Size command](#)⁴⁷



FG Color [Tool | Pen foreground color command](#)⁴⁷



Font [Tool | Font command](#)⁴⁷



[Help | Contents command](#)²



pointer tool - allows device selection



[wire tool](#)⁹⁵ - connects devices



[connector tool](#)⁸³ - provides a connection point for wires

Related topics:

[Menu commands](#)³⁷

File menu

The File menu provides commands for creating new [circuit shop files](#),⁷⁵ opening existing files, saving files, printing files, creating BMP files, registering and exiting Circuit Shop.

[New](#)³⁹
[Open](#)³⁹
[Save](#)³⁹
[Save as](#)⁴⁰
[Revert to saved](#)⁴⁰
[Close](#)⁴⁰

[Print](#)⁴⁰
[Print preview](#)⁴¹
[Printer setup](#)⁴¹

[Output BMP file](#)⁴¹

[Register](#)⁴¹

[Exit](#)⁴²

File | New Command

This command opens a new [circuit shop file](#)⁷⁵ drawing window with the default name (Untitled). (Untitled) windows are used as temporary edit buffers. Circuit Shop prompts for a filename when the window is closed or saved.



The toolbar icon [File New](#) or the keyboard sequence [Ctrl+N](#) can also be used to execute this command.

Related topics:

[File commands](#)³⁹
[Menu commands](#)³⁷
[Toolbar commands](#)³⁷

File | Open Command

This command displays the [Select File dialog box](#).⁷² In this dialog box, you select the existing [circuit shop file](#)⁷⁵ you want to open. When the file is successfully opened, a drawing window is opened.



The toolbar icon [File Open](#) or the keyboard sequence [Ctrl+O](#) can also be used to execute this command.

Related topics:

[File commands](#)³⁹
[Menu commands](#)³⁷
[Toolbar commands](#)³⁷


File | Save Command

This command saves a [Circuit Shop file](#)⁷⁵ to disk.

If the file has not been named, Circuit Shop opens the [Select File dialog box](#).⁷² This dialog box allows you to specify the filename and optionally save it in a different directory or different drive.

If an existing filename is used to name the file, Circuit Shop will ask if you want to overwrite the existing file.



The toolbar icon  or the keyboard sequence **Ctrl+S** can also be used to execute this command.

Related topics:

[File commands](#)³⁹

[Menu commands](#)³⁷

[Toolbar commands](#)³⁷

File | Save As Command

This command opens the [Select File dialog box](#).⁷² This dialog box allows the active drawing window to be saved under a different name, different directory or different drive.

If an existing filename is used to name the file, Circuit Shop will ask if you want to overwrite the existing file.



The toolbar icon  or the keyboard **F12** key can also be used to execute this command.

Related topics:

[File commands](#)³⁹

[Menu commands](#)³⁷

[Toolbar commands](#)³⁷

File | Revert To Saved Command

This command deletes the current contents of the drawing window and reloads the window from the last saved [Circuit Shop file](#).⁷⁵

Any changes made since the last time the file was saved will be lost.

Related topics:

[File commands](#)³⁹

[Menu commands](#)³⁷

File | Close Command

This command deletes the current drawing window.

If the drawing window has been modified, Circuit Shop prompts to save the [Circuit Shop file](#)⁷⁵ before deleting the drawing window.

Related topics:

[File commands](#)³⁹

[Menu commands](#)³⁷

File | Print Command

This command displays the [Print dialog box](#).⁷¹ In this dialog box, you select the print quality, optionally output to a file, and set the number of copies.

The [OK button](#) on the dialog box will generate the printout.

The keyboard sequence [Ctrl+P](#) can also be used to execute this command.

Related topics:

[File | Print preview command](#)⁴¹

[File | Printer setup command](#)⁴¹

[File | Output BMP file](#)⁴¹

[File commands](#)³⁹

[Menu commands](#)³⁷

File | Print Preview Command

This command opens a window with a rendition of what will be sent to the printer if the [File | Print command](#)⁴⁰ was invoked.

The preview window must be closed before further Circuit Shop commands can be invoked.

Related topics:

[File | Print command](#)⁴⁰

[File | Printer setup command](#)⁴¹

[File commands](#)³⁹

[Menu commands](#)³⁷

File | Printer Setup Command

This command displays the [Printer Setup dialog box](#).⁷¹ In this dialog box, you select the default or specific printer, the orientation of portrait or landscape, and paper size and source.

The [OK button](#) on the dialog box will save the current settings to be used in subsequent print commands.

Related topics:

[File | Print command](#)⁴⁰

[File | Print preview command](#)⁴¹

[File commands](#)³⁹

[Menu commands](#)³⁷

File | Output BMP File Command

This command opens the [Select File dialog box](#).⁷² This dialog box allows you to set or select the filename and directory location for the bitmap (BMP) file. On successful completion of the dialog, Circuit Shop draws the circuit in the currently active window into the selected bitmap file.

The bitmap file is automatically sized so that all of the circuit is displayed, i.e. even if the screen window only covers a portion of the circuit, all of the circuit will be drawn into the bitmap.

The bitmap file can be imported to other applications such as word processors or general graphics programs.

Related topics:

[File | Print command](#)⁴⁰

[File commands](#)³⁹

[Menu commands](#)³⁷

File | Register Command

This command displays the [Registration dialog box](#).⁷² In this dialog box, you enter the registered user's name and key.

The [OK button](#) on the dialog box will validate the entered name and key and if valid, the name and key will be saved so that subsequent Circuit Shop executions will be started as a registered copy.

Related topics:

[Purchasing information](#)⁷

[File commands](#)³⁹

[Menu commands](#)³⁷

File | Exit Command

This command exits Circuit Shop.

If you have modified a [Circuit Shop file](#)⁷⁵ without saving it, Circuit Shop prompts you to do so before exiting.

The keyboard sequence [Alt+F4](#) can also be used to execute this command.

Related topics:

[File commands](#)³⁹

[Menu commands](#)³⁷

Edit menu

The Edit menu provides commands undo previous commands, redo undo operations, move objects to and from the cut/paste buffer, delete selected objects or clear the diagram window.

[Undo](#)⁴⁵
[Redo](#)⁴⁵

[Cut](#)⁴⁴
[Copy](#)⁴³
[Paste](#)⁴⁴
[Append](#)⁴³
[Select all](#)⁴⁵

[Delete](#)⁴⁴
[Clear all](#)⁴³

Related topics:

[Menu commands](#)³⁷

Edit | Append Command

This command copies [selected objects](#)¹⁸ from the current diagram and adds them to the cut/paste buffer. Existing objects in the cut/paste buffer are not changed or deleted.

The [Edit | Paste command](#)⁴⁴ can be used to copy the objects from the cut/paste buffer to the current diagram.

Related topics:

[Edit | Cut command](#)⁴⁴
[Edit | Copy command](#)⁴³
[Edit | Paste command](#)⁴⁴
[Edit | Select All command](#)⁴⁵
[Edit commands](#)⁴³
[Menu commands](#)³⁷

Edit | Clear All Command

This command deletes all objects from the diagram.

The [Edit | Undo command](#)⁴⁵ can be used to restore the deleted objects.

Related topics:

[Edit commands](#)⁴³
[Menu commands](#)³⁷

Edit | Copy Command

This command copies [selected objects](#)¹⁸ from the current diagram to the cut/paste buffer. Any existing objects in the cut/paste buffer are deleted.

The [Edit | Paste command](#)⁴⁴ can be used to copy the objects from the cut/paste buffer to the current diagram.

The keyboard sequence [Ctrl+C](#) can also be used to execute this command.

Related topics:

[Edit | Cut command](#)⁴⁴
[Edit | Paste command](#)⁴⁴
[Edit | Append command](#)⁴³
[Edit | Select All command](#)⁴⁵
[Edit commands](#)⁴³
[Menu commands](#)³⁷

Edit | Cut Command

This command removes [selected objects](#)¹⁸ from the current diagram and moves them to the cut/paste buffer. Any existing objects in the cut/paste buffer are deleted.

The [Edit | Paste command](#)⁴⁴ can be used to copy the objects from the cut/paste buffer to the current diagram.

The [Edit | Undo command](#)⁴⁵ can be used to restore the deleted objects.

The keyboard sequence [Ctrl+X](#) can also be used to execute this command.

Related topics:

[Edit | Copy command](#)⁴³
[Edit | Paste command](#)⁴⁴
[Edit | Append command](#)⁴³
[Edit | Select All command](#)⁴⁵
[Edit commands](#)⁴³
[Menu commands](#)³⁷

Edit | Delete Command

This command removes [selected objects](#)¹⁸ from the diagram.

The [Edit | Undo command](#)⁴⁵ can be used to restore the deleted objects.

The keyboard [Del](#) key can also be used to execute this command.

Related topics:

[Edit commands](#)⁴³
[Menu commands](#)³⁷

Edit | Paste Command

This command copies objects from the cut/paste buffer to the current diagram. The command can be repeated any number of times and can be used to transfer objects from one diagram to another.

The [Edit | Undo command](#)⁴⁵ can be used to remove the objects added to the diagram with the Edit | Paste command.

The keyboard sequence [Ctrl+V](#) can also be used to execute this command.

Related topics:

[Edit | Cut command](#)⁴⁴
[Edit | Copy command](#)⁴³

[Edit | Append command](#)⁴³
[Edit | Select All command](#)⁴⁵
[Edit commands](#)⁴³
[Menu commands](#)³⁷

Edit | Select All Command

This command selects all objects on the current diagram.

The keyboard sequence **Ctrl+A** can also be used to execute this command.

Related topics:

[Selecting objects](#)¹⁸
[Edit | Cut command](#)⁴⁴
[Edit | Copy command](#)⁴³
[Edit | Append command](#)⁴³
[Edit | Delete command](#)⁴⁴
[Edit commands](#)⁴³
[Menu commands](#)³⁷

Edit | Undo Command

This command restores the diagram in the current window to the way it was before the most recent object addition, deletion or change operation(s). The command can be repeated multiple times to reverse the last set of object operations.

After one or more "undo" operations, the [Edit | Redo command](#)⁴⁵ can be used to "redo" the operation(s).

The keyboard sequence **Ctrl+Z** can also be used to execute this command.

Related topics:

[Edit commands](#)⁴³
[Menu commands](#)³⁷

Edit | Redo Command

This command reverses the last [Edit | Undo command\(s\)](#).⁴⁵ It restores the diagram in the current window to the way it was before the most recent undo commands were executed, objects may be added, deleted or changed. The command can be repeated multiple times to reverse the last set of undo operations.

The keyboard sequence **Ctrl+Y** can also be used to execute this command.

Related topics:

[Edit commands](#)⁴³
[Menu commands](#)³⁷

Tool menu

The Tool menu provides commands to analyse a circuit, and control drawing tools such as pen size, pen color, font, and drawing grid size and visibility.

[Analyse](#)⁴⁶

[Digital analysis on](#)⁴⁷

[Digital analysis off](#)⁴⁷

[Pen Size](#)⁴⁷

[Pen Foreground Color](#)⁴⁷

[Pen Background Color](#)⁴⁸

[Font](#)⁴⁷

[Drawing Grid](#)⁴⁸

Tool | Analyse Command

This command invokes Circuit Shop's [circuit analysis](#)²² function.

The type of circuit analysis depends on the device types in the circuit.

- If the diagram contains any [digital sources](#)³³ Circuit Shop interprets the diagram as a [digital circuit](#)⁸⁴ will invoke its [digital analysis](#)³² function.
- Otherwise, Circuit Shop interprets the diagram as an [analog circuit](#)⁸¹ and will invoke its [DC analysis](#)²², [sinusoidal steady state analysis](#)²⁵ or [frequency response](#)²⁷ function.



The [toolbar](#)³⁷ icon [Analyze](#) can also be used to execute this command.

Digital circuits

As stated above, if the diagram contains any [digital sources](#)³³ Circuit Shop interprets the diagram as a [digital circuit](#)⁸⁴ will invoke its [digital analysis](#)³² function. I.e. [Digital sources](#)³³ and [logic gates](#)³⁴ and [flip-flops](#)³⁴ are evaluated, and [digital displays](#)³⁶ are updated. Also, [wires](#)⁹⁵ that are [HIGH](#) or logic level [1](#) are highlighted.

Analog circuits

On the first execution of this command or if the previous analysis window has been closed, an iconified analysis window is opened to report analysis results. On subsequent executions of this command the analysis window is updated.

Before the circuit is analyzed, Circuit Shop looks for disconnected objects, e.g. wires that are not correctly terminated or devices that are not connected to other parts of the circuit. If disconnected objects are found, a message box is displayed which asks if you would like to highlight the disconnected objects. The following options are available:

- [Yes](#) - Highlights the objects and completes the analysis.
- [No](#) - Completes the analysis (no objects are highlighted).
- [Cancel](#) - Aborts the analysis.

As part of the analysis, [device meter](#)²⁹ voltage and current values are updated and [circuit analyzer](#)³⁰ graphs are generated.

Related topics:

[Menu commands](#)³⁷
[Toolbar commands](#)³⁷
[Circuit analysis help topics](#)²²

Tool | Digital Analysis On Command

In this version of Circuit Shop, this command invokes Circuit Shop's [Tool | Analyse command](#).⁴⁶

Related topics:

[Digital analysis](#)³²
[Menu commands](#)³⁷
[Toolbar commands](#)³⁷
[Circuit analysis help topics](#)²²

Tool | Digital Analysis Off Command

In this version of Circuit Shop, this command removes any [wire](#)⁹⁵ highlighting that was done by the last [Tool | Analyse command](#).⁴⁶

Related topics:

[Digital analysis](#)³²
[Menu commands](#)³⁷
[Toolbar commands](#)³⁷
[Circuit analysis help topics](#)²²

Tool | Font Command

This command opens the [Select font dialog box](#)⁷⁴ to set a new default font. New devices or objects placed on the drawing after selecting a new default font will be drawn with the new font.

If a device or object with text has been selected prior to executing this command, its font will also be changed.



The toolbar icon  can also be used to execute this command.

Related topics:

[Menu commands](#)³⁷
[Toolbar commands](#)³⁷

Tool | Pen Size Command

This command opens a dialog box to set a new pen size. New devices and objects placed on the drawing will be drawn with the new size.



The toolbar icon  can also be used to execute this command.

Related topics:

[Menu commands](#)³⁷
[Toolbar commands](#)³⁷

Tool | Pen Foreground Color Command

This command opens a dialog box to set a new foreground color. New devices and objects placed on the drawing will be drawn with the new color.



The toolbar icon  can also be used to execute this command.

Related topics:

[Menu commands³⁷](#)

[Toolbar commands³⁷](#)

Tool | Pen Background Color Command

This command opens a dialog box to set a new background color. New objects such as filled rectangles placed on the drawing will be drawn with the new color.

Related topics:

[Menu commands³⁷](#)

[Toolbar commands³⁷](#)

Tool | Drawing Grid Command

This command opens the [Edit Drawing Grid dialog box⁶⁵](#) which controls the size and visibility of the drawing grid. When added to a drawing, devices and objects are centered on drawing grid intersection points.

Related topics:

[Menu commands³⁷](#)

[Toolbar commands³⁷](#)

[Creating and editing diagrams¹¹](#)

View Menu

The View menu provides commands display or dismiss a [device or tool toolkit](#).⁵¹

[Digital device toolkit](#)⁴⁹

[Analog device toolkit](#)⁴⁹

[Paint toolkit](#)⁴⁹

View | Digital Device Toolkit Command

This command displays or dismisses the [digital device toolkit](#).⁵¹



The toolbar icon [Digital Kit](#) can also be used to execute this command.

Related topics:

[Menu commands](#)³⁷

[Toolbar commands](#)³⁷

[Device and drawing toolkits](#)⁵¹

View | Analog Device Toolkit Command

This command displays or dismisses the [analog device toolkit](#).⁵²



The toolbar icon [Analog Kit](#) can also be used to execute this command.

Related topics:

[Menu commands](#)³⁷

[Toolbar commands](#)³⁷

[Device and drawing toolkits](#)⁵¹

View | Paint Toolkit Command

This command displays or dismisses the [paint toolkit](#).⁵⁴



The toolbar icon [Paint Kit](#) can also be used to execute this command.

Related topics:

[Menu commands](#)³⁷

[Toolbar commands](#)³⁷

[Device and drawing toolkits](#)⁵¹

Help menu

The Help menu provides commands to obtain information on how to use Circuit Shop.

[Contents](#)²

- Displays Circuit Shop help contents.

[Search For Help On](#) Error! Bookmark not defined.

- Displays the help search dialog box.

How to Use Help

- Displays the standard How To Use Help information.

About Circuit Shop

- Displays the About Circuit Shop dialog box.

[Purchasing information](#)⁷

- Displays purchasing information.

Device and Drawing Toolkits

Circuit Shop provides the following device and drawing toolkits:

Digital Device Toolkit

The [digital device toolkit](#)⁵¹ allows the following digital devices to be added to a diagram.

- Logic gates ([AND](#)⁸², [OR](#)⁹¹, [NOT](#)⁹⁰, [EXCLUSIVE-OR](#)⁸⁶, [NAND](#)⁸², [NOR](#)⁹¹ and [EXCLUSIVE-NOR](#)⁸⁶)
- Digital sources ([logic level 0](#)⁸⁵, [logic level 1](#)⁸⁵ and [switch](#))⁸⁵
- Digital displays ([lamp](#)⁸⁴, [seven segment](#))⁸⁵
- [Integrate circuits](#)⁸⁹ composed of the above devices



Use [DigitalKit](#) on the [toolbar](#)³⁷ or menu command [View | Digital device toolkit](#)⁴⁹ to display or dismiss this toolkit.

Analog Device Toolkit

The [analog device toolkit](#)⁵² allows basic analog devices such as resistors, batteries and transistors to be added to a diagram.



Use [AnalogKit](#) on the [toolbar](#)³⁷ or menu command [View | Analog device toolkit](#)⁴⁹ to display or dismiss this toolkit. The analog device toolkit contains a number of [sub-toolkits](#).⁵³

Paint Toolkit

The [paint toolkit](#)⁵⁴ allows simple objects such as text, lines, ovals and rectangles to be added to a diagram.



Use [PaintKit](#) on the [toolbar](#)³⁷ or menu command [View | Paint toolkit](#)⁴⁹ to display or dismiss this toolkit.

Related topics:

[Creating and editing diagrams](#)¹¹

[Adding devices or objects to a diagram](#)¹²

[Diagram annotations](#)¹⁵

[Connecting devices - adding wires](#)¹⁴

[View commands](#)⁴⁹

Digital Device Toolkit

The digital device toolkit provides access to digital devices. To select a device or tool, click the mouse on the desired icon. You can choose any of the following:



[AND.gate](#)⁸²



[NAND.gate](#)⁸²



[OR.gate](#)⁹¹



[NOR.gate](#)⁹¹



[EXCLUSIVE-OR.gate](#)⁸⁶



[EXCLUSIVE-NOR.gate](#)⁸⁶



NOT gate⁹⁰



Digital source switch⁸⁵



Level 0 source⁸⁵



Level 1 source⁸⁵



Digital display lamp⁸⁴



Seven segment display⁸⁵



Integrated circuit⁸⁹



Flip-flop³⁴

Notes:

- The number of inputs on a [logic gate](#)³⁴ can be changed using the [Edit Logic Gate dialog box](#).⁶⁷ ([hint5](#)).⁷⁶
- [Flip-flop](#)³⁴ parameters: type, clock, outputs and inputs can be changed using the [Edit Flip-flop dialog box](#).⁶⁵ ([hint6](#)).⁷⁷
- The number of pins on an [integrated circuit](#)⁸⁹ can be changed using the [Edit IC dialog box](#).⁶⁶ ([hint4](#)).⁷⁶



Use DigitalKit on the [toolbar](#)³⁷ or menu command [View | Digital device toolkit](#)⁴⁹ to display or dismiss this toolkit.

Related topics:

[Connecting devices - adding wires](#)¹⁴

[Creating circuits inside integrated circuits](#)²⁰

[Analog device toolkit](#)⁵²

[Creating and editing diagrams](#)¹¹

[Adding devices or objects to a diagram](#)¹²

[Rotating devices or objects](#)¹⁸

[Device and drawing toolkits](#)⁵¹

[View commands](#)⁴⁹

Analog Device Toolkit

The analog device toolkit provides access to analog devices, associated tools sub-toolkits.



Use AnalogKit on the [toolbar](#)³⁷ or menu command [View | Analog device toolkit](#)⁴⁹ to display or dismiss this toolkit. The analog device toolkit contains a number of [sub-toolkits](#).⁵³ To select a device or sub-toolkit, click the mouse on the desired icon. You can choose any of the following:



pointer tool



wire tool⁹⁵



connector tool⁸³



[resistor](#)⁹²



[resistor toolkit](#)⁵⁹



[terminal & plug toolkit](#)⁵⁷



[battery](#)⁸²



[source toolkit](#)⁵⁸



[switch toolkit](#)⁵⁹



[device meter](#)²⁹



[circuit analyzer](#)³⁰



[transistor toolkit](#)⁵⁵



[capacitor](#)⁸²



[capacitor toolkit](#)⁶⁰



[diode toolkit](#)⁵⁶



[inductor](#)⁸⁹



[inductor toolkit](#)⁶⁰



[audio toolkit](#)⁵⁷



[ground](#)⁸⁷



[ground toolkit](#)⁵⁶



[miscellaneous toolkit](#)⁶¹

Related topics:

[Connecting devices - adding wires](#)¹⁴

[Digital device toolkit](#)⁵¹

[Creating and editing diagrams](#)¹¹

[Adding devices or objects to a diagram](#)¹²

[Rotating devices or objects](#)¹⁸

[Device and drawing toolkits](#)⁵¹

[View commands](#)⁴⁹

Analog Device Sub-toolkit

The [analog device toolkit](#)⁵² contains a number of sub-toolkits. Use the indicated icon on the analog device toolkit to display or dismiss the sub-toolkit.



Audio Toolkit

The [audio toolkit](#)⁵⁷ provides access to the different audio device types such as [speakers](#)⁹³ and [earphones](#).⁸⁶



Capacitor Toolkit

The [capacitor toolkit](#)⁶⁰ provides access to fixed and variable [capacitor](#)⁸² types.



Diode Toolkit

The [diode toolkit](#)⁵⁶ provides access to the different [diode](#)⁸⁵ device types.



Ground Toolkit

The [ground toolkit](#)⁵⁶ provides access to the different [ground](#)⁸⁷ and [antenna](#)⁸² device types.



Inductor Toolkit

The [inductor toolkit](#)⁶⁰ provides access to the different [inductor](#)⁸⁹ and [transformer](#)⁹⁴ types.



Miscellaneous Toolkit

The [miscellaneous toolkit](#)⁶¹ provides access to the miscellaneous devices such as [general meters](#)⁸⁷, [DC motors](#)⁸⁴, [AC generators](#)⁸¹, [lamps](#)⁸⁹, [crystals](#)⁸³, [ideal operational amplifiers \(op amps\)](#)⁸⁸ and [general amplifiers](#)⁸¹.



Resistor Toolkit

The [resistor toolkit](#)⁵⁹ provides access to the different [resistor](#)⁹² device types.



Source Toolkit

The [source toolkit](#)⁵⁸ provides access to the different voltage and current source types, including: [batteries](#)⁸², [AC voltage sources](#)⁸¹, [AC current sources](#)⁸¹ and [dependent voltage and current sources](#)⁸⁴.



Switch Toolkit

The [switch toolkit](#)⁵⁹ provides access to the different [switch](#)⁹³ types, including [push buttons](#)⁹², [fuses](#)⁸⁷ and [relays](#)⁹².



Terminal and Plug Toolkit

The [terminal and plug toolkit](#)⁵⁷ provides access to different [terminal](#)⁹³ and [plug](#)⁹¹ types, including [plug ins](#)⁹¹, [receptacles](#)⁹² and [2 & 3 prong female and male plugs](#)⁹¹.



Transistor Toolkit

The [transistor toolkit](#)⁵⁵ provides instant access to the different [transistor](#)⁹⁴ related device types and orientations.

Related topics:

[Connecting devices - adding wires](#)¹⁴

[Digital device toolkit](#)⁵¹

[Creating and editing diagrams](#)¹¹

[Adding devices or objects to a diagram](#)¹²

[Rotating devices or objects](#)¹⁸

[Device and drawing toolkits](#)⁵¹

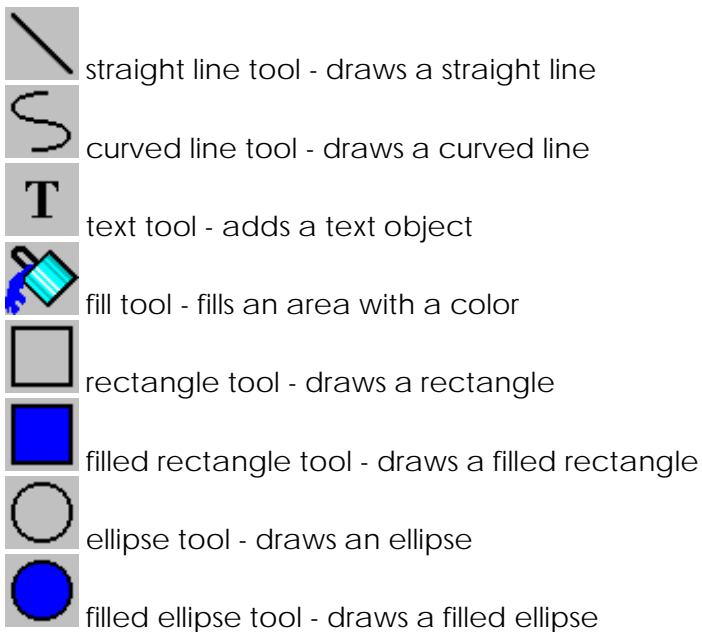
[View commands](#)⁴⁹

Paint Toolkit

The paint toolkit provides access to simple drawing tools. To select a tool, click the mouse on the desired icon. You can choose any of the following tools:



free form pen tool - draws a free form line



Use PaintKit on the [toolbar](#)³⁷ or menu command [View | Paint Toolkit](#)⁴⁹ to display or dismiss this toolkit.

Related topics:

[Adding line objects to a diagram](#)¹³
[Adding](#)¹² - [moving](#)¹⁶ - [deleting a line vertex](#)¹⁵
[Moving an entire line object](#)¹⁸
[Diagram annotations](#)¹⁵
[Adding text objects to a diagram](#)¹³
[Creating and editing diagrams](#)¹¹
[Adding devices or objects to a diagram](#)¹²
[Device and drawing toolkits](#)⁵¹
[View commands](#)⁴⁹


Transistor Toolkit

The transistor toolkit is an extension of the [analog device toolkit](#)⁵² to add the following devices to circuits.

- [Transistors](#).⁹⁴
- [Junction field effect transistors \(FETs\)](#).⁸⁶
- [MOSFETs](#).⁸⁹

This toolkit provides instant access to the different transistor related device types and orientations.



Use  on the analog device toolkit to display or dismiss this toolkit. [\(hint1\)](#)⁷⁶

To select a transistor type and initial orientation, click the mouse on the desired icon. [Rotating devices or objects](#)¹⁸ describes how to change the orientation.

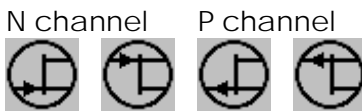
PNP transistors:



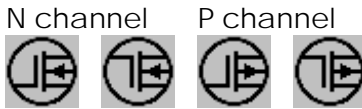
NPN transistors:



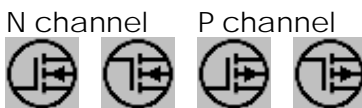
Junction FETs:



Depletion mode MOSFETs:



Enhancement mode MOSFETs:



Related topics:

[Creating and editing diagrams](#)¹¹

[Adding devices or objects to a diagram](#)¹²

[Rotating devices or objects](#)¹⁸


[Device and drawing toolkits](#)⁵¹

[View commands](#)⁴⁹

Ground Toolkit

The ground toolkit is an extension of the [analog device toolkit](#)⁵² to add [ground](#)⁸⁷ points and [antennas](#)⁸² to circuits.



Use  on the analog device toolkit to display or dismiss this toolkit. [\(hint1\)](#)⁷⁶

To select a ground or antenna, click the mouse on the desired icon. You can choose from the following types:



[chassis.ground](#)⁸⁷



[earth.ground](#)⁸⁷



[antenna](#)⁸²

Related topics:

[Creating and editing diagrams](#)¹¹

[Adding devices or objects to a diagram](#)¹²


[Device and drawing toolkits](#)⁵¹

[View commands](#)⁴⁹

Diode Toolkit

The diode toolkit is an extension of the [analog device toolkit](#)⁵² and provides access to the different [diode](#)⁸⁵ related device types.



Use  on the analog device toolkit to display or dismiss this toolkit. [\(hint1\)](#)⁷⁶

To select a diode device type, click the mouse on the desired icon. You can choose from the following types:




Related topics:

- [Creating and editing diagrams](#)¹¹
- [Adding devices or objects to a diagram](#)¹²
- [Rotating devices or objects](#)¹⁸
- [Device and drawing toolkits](#)⁵¹
- [View commands](#)⁴⁹

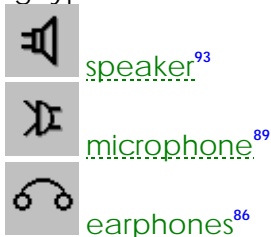
Audio Toolkit

The audio toolkit is an extension of the [analog device toolkit](#)⁵² and provides access to the different audio device types.



Use  on the analog device toolkit to display or dismiss this toolkit. [\(hint1\)](#)⁷⁶

To select an audio device type, click the mouse on the desired icon. You can choose from the following types:



Related topics:

- [Creating and editing diagrams](#)¹¹
 - [Adding devices or objects to a diagram](#)¹²
 - [Rotating devices or objects](#)¹⁸
 - [Device and drawing toolkits](#)⁵¹
 - [View commands](#)⁴⁹
-

Terminal and Plug Toolkit

The terminal and plug toolkit is an extension of the [analog device toolkit](#)⁵² and provides access to the different [terminal](#)⁹³ and [plug](#)⁹¹ types.

In Circuit Shop, [terminals](#)⁹³, [receptacles](#)⁹² and [plug ins](#)⁹¹ are also used as connection points for [circuit analyzers](#).³⁰



Use ... on the analog device toolkit to display or dismiss this toolkit. [\(hint1\)](#)⁷⁶

To select a terminal or plug type, click the mouse on the desired icon. You can choose from the following types:



[terminal](#)⁹³



[receptacle](#)⁹²



[plug in](#)⁹¹



[2 prong female plug](#)⁹¹



[2 prong male plug](#)⁹¹



[3 prong female plug](#)⁹¹



[3 prong male plug](#)⁹¹

Related topics:

[Creating and editing diagrams](#)¹¹

[Adding devices or objects to a diagram](#)¹²

[Rotating devices or objects](#)¹⁸

[Device and drawing toolkits](#)⁵¹

[View commands](#)⁴⁹

Source Toolkit

The source toolkit is an extension of the [analog device toolkit](#)⁵² and provides access to the different voltage and current source types.



Use ... on the analog device toolkit to display or dismiss this toolkit. [\(hint1\)](#)⁷⁶

To select a voltage or current source type, click the mouse on the desired icon. You can choose from the following source types:



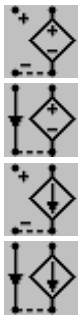
[battery](#)⁸²



[AC voltage source](#)⁸¹



[AC current source](#)⁸¹



[Voltage-controlled voltage source \(VCVS\)](#)⁹⁵

[Current-controlled voltage source \(CCVS\)](#)⁸³

[Voltage-controlled current source \(VCCS\)](#)⁹⁵

[Current-controlled current source \(CCCS\)](#)⁸³

Related topics:

[Creating and editing diagrams](#)¹¹

[Adding devices or objects to a diagram](#)¹²


[Device and drawing toolkits](#)⁵¹

[View commands](#)⁴⁹

Switch Toolkit

The switch toolkit is an extension of the [analog device toolkit](#)⁵² and provides access to the different [switch](#)⁹³ types.



Use  on the analog device toolkit to display or dismiss this toolkit. [\(hint1\)](#)⁷⁶

To select a switch type, click the mouse on the desired icon. You can choose from the following types:



[single-throw single-pole switch](#)⁹³

[normally open push button](#)⁹²

[normally closed push button](#)⁹²

[fuse](#)⁸⁷

[normally open relay](#)⁹²

[normally closed relay](#)⁹²

Related topics:

[Creating and editing diagrams](#)¹¹

[Adding devices or objects to a diagram](#)¹²

[Rotating devices or objects](#)¹⁸


[Device and drawing toolkits](#)⁵¹

[View commands](#)⁴⁹

Resistor Toolkit

The resistor toolkit is an extension of the [analog device toolkit](#)⁵² and provides access to the different [resistor](#)⁹² device types.



Use  on the analog device toolkit to display or dismiss this toolkit. [\(hint1\)](#)⁷⁶

To select a resistor type, click the mouse on the desired icon. You can choose from the following types:



fixed [resistor](#)⁹²



[potentiometer](#)⁹¹



variable [resistor](#)⁹²

Related topics:

[Creating and editing diagrams](#)¹¹

[Adding devices or objects to a diagram](#)¹²

[Rotating devices or objects](#)¹⁸


[Device and drawing toolkits](#)⁵¹

[View commands](#)⁴⁹

Capacitor Toolkit

The capacitor toolkit is an extension of the [analog device toolkit](#)⁵² and provides access to fixed and variable [capacitor](#)⁸² device types.



Use  on the analog device toolkit to display or dismiss this toolkit. [\(hint1\)](#)⁷⁶

To select a capacitor type, click the mouse on the desired icon. You can choose from the following types:



fixed [capacitor](#)⁸²



variable capacitor

Related topics:

[Creating and editing diagrams](#)¹¹

[Adding devices or objects to a diagram](#)¹²

[Rotating devices or objects](#)¹⁸

[Device and drawing toolkits](#)⁵¹

[View commands](#)⁴⁹

Inductor Toolkit

The inductor toolkit is an extension of the [analog device toolkit](#)⁵² and provides access to the different [inductor](#)⁸⁹ and [transformer](#)⁹⁴ device types.



Use  on the analog device toolkit to display or dismiss this toolkit. [\(hint1\)](#)⁷⁶

To select an inductor or transformer type, click the mouse on the desired icon. You can choose from the following types:



fixed [inductor](#)⁸⁹



variable inductor



[transformer](#)⁹⁴



tapped transformer

Related topics:

[Creating and editing diagrams](#)¹¹

[Adding devices or objects to a diagram](#)¹²

[Rotating devices or objects](#)¹⁸

[Device and drawing toolkits](#)⁵¹

[View commands](#)⁴⁹

Miscellaneous Toolkit

The miscellaneous toolkit is an extension of the [analog device toolkit](#)⁵² and provides access to a variety of miscellaneous analog devices.



Use **Misc.** on the analog device toolkit to display or dismiss this toolkit. [\(hint1\)](#)⁷⁶

To select a device, click the mouse on the desired icon. You can choose from the following devices:



[General meter](#)⁸⁷



[DC motor](#)⁸⁴



[AC generator](#)⁸¹



[Lamp](#)⁸⁹



[Crystal](#)⁸³



[Ideal operational amplifier](#)⁸⁸



[General amplifier](#)⁸¹

Related topics:

[Creating and editing diagrams](#)¹¹

[Adding devices or objects to a diagram](#)¹²

[Rotating devices or objects](#)¹⁸

[Device and drawing toolkits](#)⁵¹

[View commands](#)⁴⁹

Circuit Shop Dialog Boxes

Circuit Shop includes the following dialog boxes:

[Edit Analyzer dialog box](#)⁶²
[Edit Axis Information dialog box](#)⁶⁴
[Edit Device dialog box](#)⁶⁴
[Edit Drawing Grid dialog box](#)⁶⁵
[Edit Flip-flop dialog box](#)⁶⁵
[Edit IC dialog box](#)⁶⁶
[Edit Logic gate dialog box](#)⁶⁷
[Edit Meter dialog box](#)⁶⁸
[Edit Source dialog box](#)⁶⁹
[Edit Text dialog box](#)⁷⁰
[Edit Transformer dialog box](#)⁷⁰
[Print dialog box](#)⁷¹
[Printer Setup dialog box](#)⁷¹
[Registration dialog box](#)⁷²
[Select File dialog box](#)⁷²
[Select Font dialog box](#)⁷⁴

Related topics:

[Modifying device values](#)¹⁶
[Creating and editing diagrams](#)¹¹
[Menu commands](#)³⁷
[Toolbar commands](#)³⁷

Edit Analyzer Dialog Box

The Edit Analyzer dialog box is where a [circuit analyzer's](#)³⁰ attributes are initialised or modified. To open the dialog box, move the mouse onto the diagram over the analyzer object to be modified and double click the left mouse button. See also [modifying device values](#).¹⁶

Name Input Box

Where an optional text description for the analyzer is entered.

Analyzer Type Input Box

Where the analyzer type is defined. Circuit Shop currently supports the following analyzer type:

- [Frequency response](#)²⁷

Terminal Id Input Box

Where a numeric identifier for the circuit [terminal](#)⁹³ to be analyzed is entered. This is the circuit test point for the analyzer. Examples of valid terminal ids: 1, 5, 27 and 1039.

Frequency Min Input Box

Where a numeric value is entered for the minimum [frequency](#)⁸⁷ in [hertz](#).⁸⁸ Examples: 1, 100, 2500 and 1e5.

Frequency Max Input Box

Where a numeric value is entered for the maximum [frequency](#)⁸⁷ in [hertz](#).⁸⁸ Examples: 1, 100, 2500 and 1e5.

Note: Frequency Max must be greater than Frequency Min.

Frequency Points/Decade Input Box

Where a numeric value is entered for the frequency points per decade, i.e. the number of frequencies that will be used in the circuit analysis per frequency decade. The greater the number, the smoother the output graph and the longer the analysis will take. Examples: [2](#), [5](#) and [10](#).

Plot Type Input Box

Where the [frequency response](#)²⁷ plot type is defined. Circuit Shop supports the following plot types.

- [Magnitude \(Volts\)](#)
- [Phase \(Degrees\)](#)
- [Magnitude \(dB\)](#)
- [Group Delay \(Seconds\)](#)

The [Magnitude \(dB\)](#) [frequency response](#)²⁷ plot type uses the following equation.

$$\text{dB} = 20.0 \times \log_{10} \left(\frac{V_{\text{mag}}}{V_{\text{ref}}} \right)$$

where V_{mag} = voltage magnitude at the circuit test point
 V_{ref} = zero dB reference

The [Group Delay \(Seconds\)](#) [frequency response](#)²⁷ plot type uses the following equation.

$$\text{group delay} = \frac{1}{360} \times \frac{d\text{Phase}}{d\text{Frequency}}$$

where $d\text{Phase}$ = change in phase in degrees
 $d\text{Frequency}$ = change in frequency in hertz

Group delay is a measure of the change in [phase](#)⁹¹ for a change in [frequency](#).⁸⁷

Zero dB Ref Input Box

Where the zero [decibel \(dB\)](#)⁸⁴ reference is defined. This value is only used by the [Magnitude \(dB\)](#) [frequency response](#)²⁷ plot type. The zero [dB](#)⁸⁴ reference must be greater than zero. Examples: [1](#), [1.5](#) and [5](#).

OK Button

Saves the current dialog box settings.

Cancel Button

Closes the dialog window without changing the current analyzer values and attributes.

X and Y Axis Buttons

Opens the [Edit Axis Information dialog box](#)⁶⁴ for either the X or Y axis. This dialog box controls the axis title, auto or manual scaling, min and max values, and axis type (linear or logarithmic).

Help Button

Displays this help topic.

Related topics:

[Analysing a circuit](#)¹⁹

[Circuit analysis help topics](#)²²

[Frequency response](#)²⁷

[Sinusoidal steady state analysis](#)²⁵

[Creating and Editing Diagrams](#)¹¹

Edit Axis Information Dialog Box

The Edit Axis Information dialog box is where a graph axis' attributes are set or revised.

Title Input Box

Where an optional text description for the axis is entered.

Auto Scale Check Box

Where axis scaling behaviour (manual or automatic) is defined.

Min and Max Input Boxes

Where numeric values are entered for the axis minimum and maximum. Examples: [1](#), [100](#), [2500](#) and [1e5](#).

Note: These values have no effect if the Auto Scale Check Box has been selected.

Axis Type Input Box

Where the axis type is defined. Circuit Shop currently supports the following axis types:

- [linear](#)
- [logarithmic](#)

OK Button

Saves the current dialog box settings.

Cancel Button

Closes the dialog window without changing the current axis values and attributes.

Help Button

Displays this help topic.

Related topics:

[Dialog boxes](#)⁶²

Edit Device Dialog Box

The Edit Device dialog box is where device values and other attributes are initialised or modified. To open the dialog box, move the mouse onto the diagram over the device or object to be modified and double click the left mouse button. See also [modifying device values](#).¹⁶

Device Id Input Box

Where a numeric identifier for the device is entered. A numeric value of zero will suppress the output of the device Id. Examples of valid device Ids: [1](#), [5](#), [27](#) and [1039](#).

Device Value Input Box

Where an optional numeric value for the device is entered. Examples of valid device values: [1](#), [500](#), [1000](#), [55000](#), [1e3](#), [1e-12](#), [1.5k](#) and [2.5M](#).

As shown in the above examples, you can optionally use a single character [scaling suffix](#)⁷⁵ to scale the input value.

Device Name Input Box

Where an optional text description for the device is entered.

Value Slider Check Box

Where a [value slider](#)⁷⁶ can be enabled or disabled for the device.

OK Button

Saves the current dialog box settings.

Cancel Button

Closes the dialog window without changing the current device values and attributes.

Help Button

Displays this help topic.

Related topics:

[Modifying device values or other object attributes](#)¹⁶

[Creating and Editing Diagrams](#)¹¹

[Dialog boxes](#)⁶²

Edit Drawing Grid Dialog Box

The Edit Drawing Grid dialog box is where the size and visibility attributes of the drawing grid are set or revised. These attributes are saved with the diagram and restored when the diagram is read back in.

X - Horizontal Size Input Box

Where the horizontal grid size in pixels is entered. Examples: 1, 5, 10 and 25.

Y - Vertical Size Input Box

Where the vertical grid size in pixels is entered. Examples: 1, 5, 10 and 25.

Display Grid Lines Check Box

When checked, the drawing grid is displayed in the drawing window.

OK Button

Saves the current dialog box settings.

Cancel Button

Closes the dialog window without changing the current drawing grid values.

Help Button

Displays this help topic.

Related topics:

[Dialog boxes](#)⁶²

Edit Flip-flop Dialog Box

The Edit Flip-flop dialog box is where [flip-flop](#)³⁴ attributes are initialised or modified. To open the dialog box, move the mouse onto the diagram over the flip-flop to be modified and double click the left mouse button. See also [modifying device values](#).¹⁶

Device Id Input Box Where an optional numeric identifier for the device is entered. A numeric value of zero will suppress the output of the device Id. Examples of valid device Ids: 1, 5, 27 and 1039.

Device Name Input Box Where an optional text description for the device is entered.

Flip-flop Type Input Box Where the [flip-flop](#)³⁴ type is defined. Circuit Shop supports the following flip-flop types:

- [SR - Set Reset](#)
- [JK](#)
- [D](#)
- [T - Toggle](#)

Outputs Input Box Where the [flip-flop](#)³⁴ outputs are defined. Circuit Shop supports the following flip-flop output types:

- [Q and ~Q](#)
- [Q only](#)
- [~Q only](#)

Clock Type Input Box Where the [flip-flop](#)³⁴ clock input is defined. Circuit Shop supports the following flip-flop clock input types:

- [No clock](#)
- [High level triggered](#)
- [Low level triggered](#)
- [Low-to-high transition](#)
- [High-to-low transition](#)

Preset Type Input Box Where the [flip-flop](#)³⁴ preset input is defined. Circuit Shop supports the following flip-flop preset input types:

- [No preset](#)
- [With preset](#)

Clear Type Input Box Where the [flip-flop](#)³⁴ clear input is defined. Circuit Shop supports the following flip-flop clear input types:

- [No clear](#)
- [With clear](#)

OK Button Saves the current dialog box settings.

Cancel Button Closes the dialog window without changing the existing values and attributes.

Help Button Displays this help topic.

Related topics:

[Modifying device values or other object attributes](#)¹⁶

[Creating and Editing Diagrams](#)¹¹

[Dialog boxes](#)⁶²

Edit IC Dialog Box

The Edit IC dialog box is where [integrated circuit](#)⁸⁹ device values and other attributes are initialised or modified. To open the dialog box, move the mouse onto the diagram over the IC device to be modified and double click the left mouse button. See also [modifying device values](#).¹⁶

Id Input Box

Where an optional numeric identifier for the device is entered. A numeric value of zero will suppress the output of the device Id. Examples of valid device Ids: [1](#), [5](#), [27](#) and [1039](#).

Name Input Box

Where an optional text description for the device is entered.

Part Num Input Box

Where an optional part number text string for the device is entered.

Inputs: Side & Top/Bottom Input Boxes

Where the number of pins or inputs is specified for the sides and top/bottom.

Show Pins Check Box

When this box is checked, the pins are drawn on the screen.

Show Pin Numbers Check Box

When this box is checked, the pin numbers are drawn on the screen.

OK Button

Saves the current dialog box settings.

Cancel Button

Closes the dialog window without changing the current device values and attributes.

View Circuit Button

Opens a new drawing window and displays the circuit inside the [integrated circuit](#).⁸⁹ Any Circuit Shop device or object, including additional integrated circuits, can be placed in this diagram. See [creating circuits inside ICs](#).²⁰

Help Button

Displays this help topic.

Related topics:

[Modifying device values or other object attributes](#)¹⁶

[Creating and Editing Diagrams](#)¹¹

[Dialog boxes](#)⁶²

Edit Logic Gate Dialog Box

The Edit Logic Gate dialog box is where [logic gate](#)³⁴ attributes are initialised or modified. To open the dialog box, move the mouse onto the diagram over the logic gate to be modified and double click the left mouse button. See also [modifying device values](#).¹⁶

Device Id Input Box

Where an optional numeric identifier for the device is entered. A numeric value of zero will suppress the output of the device Id. Examples of valid device Ids: 1, 5, 27 and 1039.

Device Name Input Box

Where an optional text description for the device is entered.

Inputs Box

Where a numeric value for the number of logic gate inputs is entered.

OK Button

Saves the current dialog box settings.

Cancel Button

Closes the dialog window without changing the existing values and attributes.

Help Button

Displays this help topic.

Related topics:

[Modifying device values or other object attributes](#)¹⁶

[Creating and Editing Diagrams](#)¹¹

[Dialog boxes](#)⁶²

Edit Meter Dialog Box

The Edit Meter dialog box is where a [device meter's](#)²⁹ attributes are initialised or modified. To open the dialog box, move the mouse onto the diagram over the meter object to be modified and double click the left mouse button. See also [modifying device values](#).¹⁶

Meter Type Input Box

Where the meter type and output display format is defined. Circuit Shop supports the measurement of [voltage](#),⁹⁵ [current](#),⁸⁴ [impedance](#)⁸⁸ and [power](#)⁹¹ using the following display formats.

- Voltage and current - magnitudes
- Voltage and current - RMS
- Voltage - magnitude and phase (degrees)
- Voltage - magnitude and phase (radians)
- Voltage - real and imaginary phasor
- Current - magnitude and phase (degrees)
- Current - magnitude and phase (radians)
- Current - real and imaginary phasor
- Impedance - magnitude and phase (degrees)
- Impedance - magnitude and phase (radians)
- Impedance - real and imaginary phasor
- Power - magnitude and phase (degrees)
- Power - magnitude and phase (radians)
- Power - real and imaginary phasor

Device Type Input Box

Where the type of device to be metered is defined. Circuit Shop can link [device meters](#)²⁹ to the following circuit device types.

- [Resistors](#)⁹²
- [Capacitors](#)⁸²
- [Inductors](#)⁸⁹
- [Terminals](#)⁹³
- [Terminal](#)⁹³ -to-[terminal](#)⁹³

Note:

- Device meters linked to [terminals](#)⁹³ can only measure [voltage](#).⁹⁵
- The [terminal](#)⁹³ -to-[terminal](#)⁹³ device type selection can be used to measure [voltage](#)⁹⁵ difference between two [terminals](#).⁹³

Device Id Input Box

Where a numeric identifier for the device to be metered is entered. Examples of valid device Ids: 1, 5, 27 and 1039.

The [terminal⁹³](#)-to-[terminal⁹³](#) device type selection has a special [number-number](#) format. Examples of valid [terminal⁹³](#)-to-[terminal⁹³](#) device Ids: 1-2, 5-4, 27-35 and 1039-2001.

OK Button

Saves the current dialog box settings.

Cancel Button

Closes the dialog window without changing the current meter values and attributes.

Help Button

Displays this help topic.

Related topics:

[Viewing circuit voltage and current values - adding meters²⁰](#)

[Sinusoidal steady state analysis²⁵](#)

[Creating and Editing Diagrams¹¹](#)

[Dialog boxes⁶²](#)

Edit Source Dialog Box

The Edit Source dialog box is where [alternating current⁸¹](#) (AC) [voltage⁹⁵](#) and [current⁸⁴](#) source values and other attributes are initialised or modified. To open the dialog box, move the mouse onto the diagram over the source device to be modified and double click the left mouse button. See also [modifying device values.¹⁶](#)

Device Id Input Box

Where an optional numeric identifier for the device is entered. A numeric value of zero will suppress the output of the device Id. Examples of valid device Ids: 1, 5, 27 and 1039.

Device Name Input Box

Where an optional text description for the device is entered.

Magnitude Input Box

Where a numeric magnitude value for the source is entered.

- For [voltage sources⁸¹](#), this value specifies the magnitude of the voltage in [volts⁹⁵](#) applied to the circuit.
- For [current sources⁸¹](#), this value specifies the magnitude of the current in [amperes⁸¹](#) applied to the circuit.

Examples of valid source values: 0.05, 1, 500, 1000, 1.5m and 2.4k.

As shown in the above examples, you can optionally use a single character [scaling suffix⁷⁵](#) to scale the input value.

Phase Input Box

Where a numeric [phase⁹¹](#) value, in degrees for the source is entered. Examples of valid phase values: 0, 30, 45, 180 and 360.

Frequency Input Box

Where a numeric [frequency⁸⁷](#) value, in [hertz⁸⁸](#) for the source is entered. Examples of valid phase values: 1, 60, 1000 and 50000.

As shown in the above examples, you can optionally use a single character [scaling suffix](#)⁷⁵ to scale the input value.

OK Button

Saves the current dialog box settings.

Cancel Button

Closes the dialog window without changing the existing values and attributes.

Help Button

Displays this help topic.

Related topics:

[Modifying device values or other object attributes](#)¹⁶

[Creating and Editing Diagrams](#)¹¹

[Dialog boxes](#)⁶²

Edit Text Dialog Box

The Edit Text dialog box is where a text object's value is modified. To open the dialog box, move the mouse onto the diagram over the text object to be modified and double click the left mouse button. See also [modifying device values](#).¹⁶

New Value Input Box

Where the new text value is entered.

OK Button

Saves the current dialog box value.

Cancel Button

Closes the dialog window without changing the current text object value.

Related topics:

[Adding text objects to a diagram](#)¹³

[Creating and Editing Diagrams](#)¹¹

[Dialog boxes](#)⁶²

Edit Transformer Dialog Box

The Edit Transformer dialog box is where [transformer](#)⁹⁴ attributes are initialised or modified. To open the dialog box, move the mouse onto the diagram over the device or object to be modified and double click the left mouse button. See also [modifying device values](#).¹⁶

Device Id Input Box

Where an optional numeric identifier for the device is entered. A numeric value of zero will suppress the output of the device Id. Examples of valid device Ids: 1, 5, 27 and 1039.

Device Name Input Box

Where an optional text description for the device is entered.

Primary, Secondary and Mutual Inductance Input Boxes

Where the transformer's primary, secondary and mutual [inductance](#)⁸⁸ values are entered. Examples of valid inductance values: 0.05, 1.0, 0.55, 1.5m and 240u.

As shown in the above examples, you can optionally use a single character [scaling suffix](#)⁷⁵ to scale the input value.

Polarity Input Box

Where the transformer's polarity is defined. The following polarity types are available:

- None (same as Positive in [sinusoidal steady state analysis](#)²⁵).
- Positive
- Negative

Core Type Input Box

Where the transformer's core type is defined. The following core types are available:

- Iron
- Air

OK Button

Saves the current dialog box settings.

Cancel Button

Closes the dialog window without changing the existing values and attributes.

Help Button

Displays this help topic.

Related topics:

[Modifying device values or other object attributes](#)¹⁶

[Creating and Editing Diagrams](#)¹¹

[Dialog boxes](#)⁶²

Print Dialog Box

The Print dialog box sets the printout parameters and generates a printout of the contents of a circuit shop window.

The [Print Quality input box](#) is where the printer resolution is specified.

The [Print to File check box](#) is where the printer output can be directed to a file. If this check box is selected a dialog box will be opened to specify the output filename.

The [Copies input box](#) is where the number of printed copies is specified.

The [OK button](#) will generate the printout and send it to the selected printer or file.

The [Cancel button](#) will close the dialog window without generating a printout.

The [Setup button](#) invokes the [Printer Setup dialog box](#)⁷¹ to select the default or specific printer, the page orientation of portrait or landscape, and paper size and source.

Related topics:

[File | Print command](#)⁴⁰

[File | Printer setup command](#)⁴¹

[Dialog boxes](#)⁶²

Printer Setup Dialog Box

The Printer Setup dialog box sets printer parameters for subsequent print commands. Parameters include using the windows default or a specific printer, the page orientation of portrait or landscape, and paper size and source.

The [Printer radio button box](#) is where the printer is specified. If [Default Printer](#) is selected, the current windows default printer is used. If [Specific Printer](#) is selected, the drop down selection box can be used to select a specific printer from the known set of printers.

The [Orientation radio button box](#) is where the page orientation of [Portrait](#) or [Landscape](#) is selected.

The [Paper input box](#) is where the paper size and source is selected.

The [OK button](#) will save the current dialog box settings to be used in subsequent print commands.

The [Cancel button](#) will close the dialog window without changing the printer settings.

The [Options button](#) will display a dialog box to set additional printer details including dithering and intensity.

Related topics:

[File | Print command](#)⁴⁰

[File | Print preview command](#)⁴¹

[File | Printer setup command](#)⁴¹

[Dialog boxes](#)⁶²

Registration Dialog Box

The Registration dialog box is where you enter the registered user name and key. The name and key are sent in a registration mail message after you purchase Circuit Shop. The name and key must be entered exactly as shown in the registration mail.

Registration Name Input Box

Where the name of the registered user is entered. The name must be entered exactly as shown in the registration mail.

Registration Key Input Box

Where the registered user's key is entered. The key must be entered exactly as shown in the registration mail.

OK Button

Validates the Registration Name and Key, and if valid, saves the current dialog box settings.

Cancel Button

Closes the dialog window without changing the existing values.

Help Button

Displays this help topic.

Related topics:

[File | Register menu command](#)⁴¹

[Purchasing information](#)⁷

[Dialog boxes](#)⁶²

Select File Dialog Box

The Select File dialog box is where you enter or select a file. It is used by various commands including:

- [File | Open](#)³⁹
- [File | Save](#)³⁹
- [File | Save As](#)⁴⁰
- [File | Output BMP file](#)⁴¹

The [File Name input box](#)⁷³ is where you enter the name of the file, or a filename mask to use as a filter for the Files list box.

The [Files list box](#)⁷³ displays the names of files in the current directory that match the filename mask in the File Name input box.

The [Directories list box](#)⁷³ displays the parent and sub directories above and below the current directory. You can navigate to other directories by selecting a directory name in the Directories list box.

The [OK button](#) performs the desired operation and closes the dialog box.

The [Cancel button](#) closes the dialog box without performing the desired operation.

Related topics:

[File commands](#)³⁹
[Dialog boxes](#)⁶²

File Name Input Box

The File Name input box is where you enter the name of the file, or the filename mask to use as a filter for the Files list box.

To select a file you can choose any of these actions:

- Type in a file name (if the file is not in your current directory, include the full path name) and choose [OK](#) or press Enter.
- Type in a file name with * (multiple character) and ? (single character) wildcards, which filters the files in the Files list box to match your specifications when you choose [OK](#) or press Enter.

Related topics:

[Select File dialog box](#)⁷²
[Dialog boxes](#)⁶²

Files List Box

The Files list box displays the names of files in the current directory that match the filename mask in the [File Name input box](#).⁷³

When the File Name input box is changed or a different directory is selected, the Files list box is updated to show the files in the currently chosen directory.

If the desired file is displayed in the list box, you may double-click on it to select the file.

If you are using the keyboard, use the Tab key to move to the Files list box and use the Up or Down arrow to reach the desired file. Press Enter to select the file.

Press the Spacebar or an arrow key to select the first item. Press Enter to select the item.

Related topics:

[Select File dialog box](#)⁷²

[Dialog boxes](#)⁶²

Directories list box

The Directories list box displays the names of available directories and drives.

To work with directories, press Alt+D. The first directory in the Directories list box will be outlined.

Double-click directories in the Directories list box to change to a different directory.

If you are using your keyboard, use the arrow keys to select the directory or drive you want to open and choose OK or press Enter.

If you see and double-click the [...] symbol, the directory will change to the parent directory of the current subdirectory.

Related topics:

[Select File dialog box](#)⁷²

[Dialog boxes](#)⁶²

Select Font Dialog Box

The Select Font dialog box is where a font is selected.

The [Font input box](#) is where the font is selected.

The [Font Style input box](#) is where a style is selected. Examples of font styles: Regular, Italic, Bold and Bold Italic.

The [Size input box](#) is where the point size is specified.

Related topics:

[Tool | Font command](#)⁴⁷

[Creating and editing diagrams](#)¹¹

[Dialog boxes](#)⁶²

Circuit Shop Files

Circuit Shop files hold device and schematic information, and diagram annotations. By default, they have the file type .CS1.

Scaling Suffix

Circuit Shop allows device values to be entered with and without scaling suffixes. Examples of valid device values: 1, 500, 1000, 55000, 1e3, 1e-12, 1.5k and 2.5M.

As shown in the above examples, you can optionally use the following single character suffixes to scale the input value.

Suffix	Multiplier
=====	=====
G	1e9
M	1e6
K or k	1e3
m	1e-3
u	1e-6
n	1e-9
p	1e-12

[Unit conversion](#)⁷⁵ describes the standard unit abbreviations.

Related topics:

[Modifying device values or other object attributes](#)¹⁶

[Creating and Editing Diagrams](#)¹¹

[Dialog boxes](#)⁶²

Unit Conversion

The standard unit abbreviations, prefixes and their equivalent multipliers used in electronics are shown below:

G	giga	1,000,000,000.0	1e9
M	mega	1,000,000.0	1e6
k	kilo	1,000.0	1e3
m	milli	0.001	1e-3
μ	micro	0.000,001	1e-6
p	pico	0.000,000,000,001	1e-12

For example, 10M ohm means 10 mega or million ohms and 3μA means 3 micro or 3-millionths of an ampere.

When using [Ohm's law](#)⁹⁰ and other equations, the values for [voltage](#),⁹⁵ [current](#)⁸⁴ and [resistance](#)⁹² must be in the same basic units, [volts](#),⁹⁵ [amperes](#)⁸¹ and [ohms](#)⁹⁰ respectively. For example: given a current of 1.5 μA (micro amperes) and a resistance of 5 M ohms (mega ohms) in a circuit, what is the applied voltage?

$$\begin{aligned} E &= I \times R \\ &= 1.5e-6 \times 5e6 \\ &= 7.5 \text{ volts} \end{aligned}$$
$$\begin{aligned} I &= 1.5 \mu A \\ &= 1.5 \times 1e-6 \text{ amps} \\ &= 1.5e-6 \text{ amps} \end{aligned}$$
$$\begin{aligned} R &= 5 \text{ M ohms} \\ &= 5 \times 1e6 \text{ ohms} \\ &= 5e6 \text{ ohms} \end{aligned}$$

Also, when adding device values, a common unit must be used. For example: given three resistors in series with values 10, 1.2K and 2.5M ohms, what is the total resistance?

R (total)	R1 = 10 ohms
= R1 + R2 + R3	R2 = 1.2 K ohms
= 10	= 1.2 x 1000 ohms
+1200	= 1200 ohms
+2500000	R3 = 2.5 M ohms
= 2501210 ohms	= 2.5 x 1000000 ohms
	= 2500000

Related topics:

[Scaling suffix](#)⁷⁵

[Modifying device values or other object attributes](#)¹⁶

Value Slider

The value slider is not implemented in this version of Circuit Shop.

Hints

[Hint1](#)⁷⁶ - to display the analog device toolkit.

[Hint2](#)⁷⁶ - to display the paint toolkit.

[Hint3](#)⁷⁶ - to display the digital device toolkit.

[Hint4](#)⁷⁶ - to change the number of pins on an integrated circuit.

[Hint5](#)⁷⁶ - to change the number of inputs on a logic gate.

[Hint6](#)⁷⁷ - to change flip-flop attributes.

Hint1



Use Analog Kit on the [toolbar](#)³⁷ or menu command [View | Analog device toolkit](#)⁴⁹ to display the [analog device toolkit](#).⁵²

Hint2



Use PaintKit on the [toolbar](#)³⁷ or menu command [View | Paint toolkit](#)⁴⁹ to display the [paint toolkit](#).⁵⁴

Hint3



Use DigitalKit on the [toolbar](#)³⁷ or menu command [View | Digital device toolkit](#)⁴⁹ to display the [digital device toolkit](#).⁵¹

Hint4

To change the number of pins, or inputs on an [integrated circuit](#),⁸⁹ move the pointer over the integrated circuit, double-click to open the [Edit IC dialog box](#),⁶⁶ modify the [Inputs](#): box and press [OK](#).

Hint5

To change the number of inputs on an [logic gate](#),³⁴ move the pointer over the logic gate, double-click to open the [Edit Logic Gate dialog box](#),⁶⁷ modify the [Inputs](#): box and press [OK](#).

Hint6

To change [flip-flop](#)³⁴ attributes move the pointer over the flip-flop, double-click to open the [Edit Flip-flop dialog box](#),⁶⁵ modify the inputs boxes and press [OK](#).

Glossary

[AC⁸¹](#)

[AC current source⁸¹](#)

[AC generator⁸¹](#)

[AC voltage source⁸¹](#)

[Alternating current⁸¹](#)

[Ampere⁸¹](#)

[Amplifier⁸¹](#)

[Analog circuit⁸¹](#)

[AND gate⁸²](#)

[Antenna⁸²](#)

[Battery⁸²](#)

[Boolean expression⁸²](#)

[Capacitor⁸²](#)

[Capacitance⁸³](#)

[Capacitive reactance⁸³](#)

[CCCS⁸³](#)

[CCVS⁸³](#)

[Chassis ground⁸⁷](#)

[Connector⁸³](#)

[Crystal⁸³](#)

[Current⁸⁴](#)

[Current-controlled current source⁸³](#)

[Current-controlled voltage source⁸³](#)

[Current source⁸¹](#)

[D flip-flop³⁴](#)

[dB⁸⁴](#)

[DC motor⁸⁴](#)

[Decibel⁸⁴](#)

[Dependent voltage and current source⁸⁴](#)

[Dielectric⁸⁴](#)

[Digital circuit⁸⁴](#)

[Digital display³⁶](#)

[Digital display lamp⁸⁴](#)

[Digital display seven segment⁸⁵](#)

[Digital source³³](#)

[Digital source level 0⁸⁵](#)

[Digital source level 1⁸⁵](#)

[Digital source switch⁸⁵](#)

[Diode⁸⁵](#)

[Diode model⁸⁵](#)

[Direct current⁸⁶](#)

[Earphones⁸⁶](#)

[Earth ground⁸⁷](#)

[Energy⁸⁶](#)

[EXCLUSIVE-OR gate⁸⁶](#)

[EXCLUSIVE-NOR gate⁸⁶](#)

[Farad⁸⁶](#)
[FET⁸⁶](#)
[Field effect transistor⁸⁶](#)
[Flip-flop³⁴](#)
[Frequency⁸⁷](#)
[Full-wave rectifier⁸⁷](#)
[Fuse⁸⁷](#)

[Gate³⁴](#)
[General meter⁸⁷](#)
[Giga⁷⁵](#)
[Ground⁸⁷](#)

[Half-wave rectifier⁸⁷](#)
[Henry⁸⁸](#)
[Hertz⁸⁸](#)

[IC⁸⁹](#)
[Ideal operational amplifier⁸⁸](#)
[Impedance⁸⁸](#)
[Inductor⁸⁹](#)
[Inductance⁸⁸](#)
[Inductive reactance⁸⁸](#)
[Integrated circuit⁸⁹](#)

[JK flip-flop³⁴](#)
[Junction FET⁸⁶](#)

[Kilo⁷⁵](#)
[Kirchoff's current law⁸⁹](#)
[Kirchoff's voltage law⁸⁹](#)

[Lamp⁸⁹](#)
[LED⁸⁹](#)
[Logic gate³⁴](#)
[Logic level 0⁸⁵](#)
[Logic level 1⁸⁵](#)
[Logic level switch⁸⁵](#)
[Light emitting diode⁸⁹](#)

[Mega⁷⁵](#)
[Metal-oxide-semiconductor field effect transistor⁸⁹](#)
[Micro⁷⁵](#)
[Microphone⁸⁹](#)
[Milli⁷⁵](#)
[MOSFET⁸⁹](#)
[Mutual inductance⁹⁰](#)

[NAND gate⁸²](#)
[NOR gate⁹¹](#)
[Normally closed push button⁹²](#)
[Normally open push button⁹²](#)
[NOT gate⁹⁰](#)

Ohm⁹⁰
 Ohm's law⁹⁰
 Op amp⁹⁰
 Operational amplifier⁹⁰
 OR gate⁹¹

 Parallel circuit⁹¹
 Phase⁹¹
 Pico⁷⁵
 Plug⁹¹
 Plug in⁹¹
 POT⁹¹
 Potentiometer⁹¹
 Power⁹¹
 Push button⁹²

 Reactance⁹²
 Receptacle⁹²
 Rectification⁹²
 Relay⁹²
 Resistor⁹²
 Resistance⁹²
 Resonant frequency⁹²

 SCR⁹³
 Semiconductor⁹³
 Series circuit⁹³
 Set reset flip-flop³⁴
 Seven segment display⁸⁵
 Silicon controlled rectified⁹³
 Speaker⁹³
 SPST switch⁹³
 SR - set reset flip-flop³⁴
 Switch⁹³

 T - toggle flip-flop³⁴
 Terminal⁹³
 Time constant⁹⁴
 Toggle flip-flop³⁴
 Transformer⁹⁴
 Transistor⁹⁴
 Truth table⁹⁴
 Tunnel diode⁹⁴

 VCCS⁹⁵
 VCVS⁹⁵
 Vertex⁹⁵
 Voltage⁹⁵
 Voltage-controlled current source⁹⁵
 Voltage-controlled voltage source⁹⁵
 Voltage source⁸¹

Watt⁹⁵
Watt-hour⁹⁵
Wire⁹⁵

Zener diode⁹⁵



AC Current Source [\(toolkit⁵² - sub-toolkit⁵⁸\)](#)

Definition: A device connected into an electrical circuit to introduce a specified [alternating current⁸¹](#) (AC). An AC current has a [phase⁹¹](#) and a [frequency⁸⁷](#).

AC current sources can be used in Circuit Shop's [sinusoidal steady state analysis²⁵](#) and [frequency response²⁷](#) capabilities.



AC Generator [\(toolkit⁵² - sub-toolkit⁶¹\)](#)

Definition: A rotating machine which converts mechanical energy into electrical [energy⁸⁶](#) in the form of [alternating current⁸¹](#) (AC).



AC Voltage Source [\(toolkit⁵² - sub-toolkit⁵⁸\)](#)

Definition: A device connected into an electrical circuit to introduce a specified [alternating current⁸¹](#) (AC) [voltage⁹⁵](#). An AC voltage has a [phase⁹¹](#) and a [frequency⁸⁷](#).

AC voltage sources can be used in Circuit Shop's [sinusoidal steady state analysis²⁵](#) and [frequency response²⁷](#) capabilities.

Alternating Current (AC)

Definition: A variable valued [current⁸⁴](#) which repeatedly increases to a maximum flow in one direction, decreases to zero, reverses, then increases to a maximum flow in the other direction. The number of times this cycle this is repeated per second is called the frequency. The average current over one cycle is zero.

Ampere

Definition: The usual measure of current in an electric circuit. One Ampere of current is produced by an electromotive force of one [volt⁹⁵](#) acting through a [resistance⁹²](#) of one [ohm⁹⁰](#).



Amplifier [\(toolkit⁵² - sub-toolkit⁶¹\)](#)

Definition: A circuit designed to increase the [voltage⁹⁵](#), [current⁸⁴](#) or [power⁹¹](#) of an input signal.

Analog Circuit

Definition: A circuit composed of devices that operates at many non-discrete [voltage⁹⁵](#) values.

Examples of analog circuit devices can be found in Circuit Shop's [analog device toolkit⁵²](#).

Circuit Shop's [circuit analysis²²](#) function includes the following analog circuit analysis functions:

- [DC analysis²²](#)
- [Sinusoidal steady state analysis²⁵](#)
- [Frequency response²⁷](#)

Also see [digital circuits⁸⁴](#).



AND Gate



NAND Gate [\(toolkit\)](#)⁵¹

Definition: An AND gate is a digital device with a **HIGH** output (logic level **1**) if all inputs are **HIGH**. If any input is **LOW**, (logic level **0**) the output will be **LOW**.

A NAND (NOT AND) gate is an inverted AND gate.

Input 1 =====	Input 2 =====	AND Output =====	NAND Output =====
0	0	0	1
0	1	0	1
1	0	0	1
1	1	1	0

AND and NAND gates can be used in Circuit Shop's [digital analysis](#)³² function.



Antenna [\(toolkit\)](#)⁵² - [sub-toolkit](#)⁵⁶

Definition: A device to radiate or receive radio waves.



Battery [\(toolkit\)](#)⁵² - [sub-toolkit](#)⁵⁸

Definition: A device connected into an electrical circuit to introduce a specified [direct current](#)⁸⁶ (DC) [voltage](#).⁹⁵

Batteries can be used in Circuit Shop's [DC analysis](#)²² function.

Boolean Expression

Definition: A mathematical expression using variables with values **0** and **1**. The basic operations are AND, OR, NOT and EXCLUSIVE-OR. (Inverted, or reversed operations are NAND, NOR and EXCLUSIVE-NOR.) The operations have direct [logic gate](#)³⁴ equivalents.

NOT	: $B = \overline{A}$
AND	: $C = AB$ or $C = A \bullet B$
NAND	: $C = \overline{AB}$ or $C = \overline{A \bullet B}$
OR	: $C = A + B$
NOR	: $C = \overline{A + B}$
EXCLUSIVE-OR	: $C = A \oplus B$
EXCLUSIVE-NOR	: $C = \overline{A \oplus B}$



Capacitor [\(toolkit\)](#)⁵² - [sub-toolkit](#)⁶⁰

Definition: A device connected into an electrical circuit to introduce a specified [capacitance](#).⁸³

Capacitors can be used in Circuit Shop's [sinusoidal steady state analysis](#)²⁵ and [frequency response](#)²⁷ capabilities.

Capacitance

Definition: The property of a circuit which impedes a change in [voltage](#).⁹⁵ [Capacitors](#)⁸² are the usual source of capacitance. Capacitance is measured in [farads](#)⁸⁶ in honor of Michael Faraday. In electronic circuits, the usual measure of capacitance is microfarads (μF) or picofarads (pF), 1e-6 or 1e-12 farads respectively.

Capacitive Reactance

Definition: The opposition to the flow of [alternating current](#)⁸¹ by a [capacitor](#).⁸² Capacitive reactance is inversely proportional to the amount [capacitance](#)⁸³ of the capacitor and the circuit [frequency](#).⁸⁷ In other words, as the capacitance or frequency increases, the opposition to AC current flow reduces. Like [resistance](#),⁹² capacitive reactance is measured in [ohms](#).⁹⁰

$$X_c = \frac{1}{2\pi f C}$$

Where: X_c = capacitive reactance in ohms
 $2\pi \cong 6.28$ (radians in 360 degrees)
 f = frequency in hertz
 C = capacitance in farads



Current-Controlled Current Source (CCCS) [\(toolkit](#)⁵² - [sub-toolkit](#))⁵⁸

Definition: A special type of [current](#)⁸⁴ source whose output current is equal to the input current multiplied by a constant. In the above icon, the output current flowing between the two right hand side terminals is equal to the input current flowing between the two left hand terminals multiplied by a constant.

Current-controlled current sources can be used in Circuit Shop's [sinusoidal steady state analysis](#)²⁵ and [frequency response](#)²⁷ capabilities.



Current-Controlled Voltage Source (CCVS) [\(toolkit](#)⁵² - [sub-toolkit](#))⁵⁸

Definition: A special type of [voltage](#)⁹⁵ source whose output voltage is equal to the input [current](#)⁸⁴ multiplied by a constant. In the above icon, the output voltage across the two right hand side terminals is equal to the input current flowing between the two left hand terminals multiplied by a constant.

Current-controlled voltage sources can be used in Circuit Shop's [sinusoidal steady state analysis](#)²⁵ and [frequency response](#)²⁷ capabilities.



Connector [\(toolbar](#)³⁷ - [toolkit](#))⁵²

Definition: A device to allow one or more [wires](#)⁹⁵ or devices to be electrically connected together.



Crystal [\(toolkit⁵² - sub-toolkit\)](#)⁶¹

Definition: A thin plate of quartz which is ground to a certain thickness to vibrate at a specific frequency when [energy](#)⁸⁶ is applied.

Current

Definition: The rate of flow of electrons in a circuit measured in [amperes](#).⁸¹

Decibel (dB)

Definition: The standard unit of measurement of a circuit's gain (or loss). The number of decibels for a given power ratio is

$$\text{dB} = 10.0 \times \log_{10} \left(\frac{P_2}{P_1} \right)$$

Dependent Voltage and Current Sources [\(toolkit⁵² - sub-toolkit\)](#)⁵⁸

Definition: A special type of [voltage](#)⁹⁵ or [current](#)⁸⁴ source whose output is equal to the input voltage or current multiplied by a constant. There are four types of dependent sources:



[Voltage-controlled voltage source \(VCVS\)](#)⁹⁵



[Current-controlled voltage source \(CCVS\)](#)⁸³



[Voltage-controlled current source \(VCCS\)](#)⁹⁵



[Current-controlled current source \(CCCS\)](#)⁸³

Dependent voltage and current sources can be used in Circuit Shop's [sinusoidal steady state analysis](#)²⁵ and [frequency response](#)²⁷ capabilities.



DC Motor [\(toolkit⁵² - sub-toolkit\)](#)⁶¹

Definition: A rotating machine which converts [direct current](#)⁸⁶ (DC) electrical [energy](#)⁸⁶ into mechanical energy.

Dielectric

Definition: The insulating material between the two plates of a [capacitor](#).⁸²

Digital Circuit

Definition: A circuit composed of devices that operate at two discrete values, **LOW** and **HIGH** (logic levels **0** and **1** respectively).

Examples of digital circuit devices can be found in [digital sources](#),³³ [logic gates](#),³⁴ [flip-flops](#)³⁴ and [digital displays](#).³⁶

Circuit Shop's [circuit analysis](#)²² function includes [digital circuit analysis](#).³²

Also see [analog circuits](#).⁸¹



Digital Display Lamp [\(toolkit\)](#)⁵¹

Definition: A digital display device whose display is **off** or **on** if the input logic level is **LOW** or **HIGH** respectively.

Digital display lamps can be used in Circuit Shop's [digital analysis](#)³² function.



Seven Segment Display [\(toolkit\)](#)⁵¹

Definition: A digital device which displays **0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, A, b, C, d, E** or **F** depending on the input binary logic level at its four inputs.

Seven segment displays can be used in Circuit Shop's [digital analysis](#)³² function.



Digital Source Logic Level 0 [\(toolkit\)](#)⁵¹

Definition: A digital device with a constant **LOW** output (logic level **0**).

Digital sources can be used in Circuit Shop's [digital analysis](#)³² function.



Digital Source Logic Level 1 [\(toolkit\)](#)⁵¹

Definition: A digital device with a constant **HIGH** output (logic level **1**).

Digital sources can be used in Circuit Shop's [digital analysis](#)³² function.



Digital Source Switch [\(toolkit\)](#)⁵¹

Definition: A digital device with a constant **LOW** or **HIGH** output (logic level **0** or **1**) depending on its current switch setting. The output is toggled between **LOW** and **HIGH** by single mouse clicks on the switch.

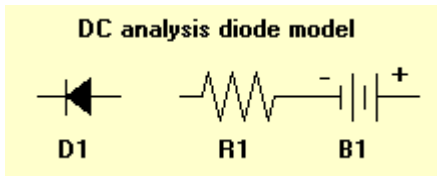
Digital source switches can be used in Circuit Shop's [digital analysis](#)³² function. Also, the digital analysis function is invoked each time the switch is toggled.



Diode [\(toolkit\)](#)⁵² - [sub-toolkit](#)⁵⁶

Definition: A [semiconductor](#)⁹³ device with two electrodes which allows [current](#)⁸⁴ to flow in one direction. In the above icon, the left and right electrodes are called the anode and cathode respectively.

Diodes can be used in Circuit Shop's [DC analysis](#)²² function. [Diode model](#)⁸⁵ describes how diodes are modelled in Circuit Shop.



Diode Model

The above diagram shows Circuit Shop's [DC analysis](#)²² diode model.

[Diodes](#)⁸⁵ are modelled as a [resistor](#)⁹² R1 and [battery](#)⁸² B1 in [series](#).⁹³

The diode has three states and each state has a different resistor and battery [resistance](#)⁹² and [voltage](#)⁹⁵ values respectively.

State	R1 (ohms)	B1 (volts)	Diode Voltage
====	=====	=====	=====
Forward	5	-0.7	> 0.7
Reverse	500 M	0.0	> -25.0
Breakdown	5	25.0	< -25.0

Circuit Shop determines the diode state based on the voltage across the diode. For example, when the voltage across the diode is greater than 0.7 volts, the diode is in the [Forward](#) bias state.

Direct Current (DC)

Definition: A constant valued [current](#)⁸⁴ which flows in one direction.



Earphones [\(toolkit](#)⁵² - [sub-toolkit](#))⁵⁷

Definition: An electroacoustic transducer intended to be used near the ears which converts [electrical power](#)⁹¹ into acoustic power with approximately the same waveform as the electrical input.

Energy

Definition: The amount of work performed. Whereas [power](#)⁹¹ is the rate at which work is done, energy is the amount of work actually performed in a period of time. In an electrical circuit, energy is equal to the power times the time duration. Electrical energy is measured in [watt-hours](#).⁹⁵ one watt-hour is equivalent to one [watt](#)⁹⁵ of power used for one hour.



EXCLUSIVE-OR Gate



EXCLUSIVE-NOR Gate [\(toolkit\)](#)⁵¹

Definition: An EXCLUSIVE-OR gate is a digital device with a [HIGH](#) output (logic level 1) if one and only one input is [HIGH](#).

An EXCLUSIVE-NOR (NOT EXCLUSIVE-OR) gate is an inverted EXCLUSIVE-OR gate.

Input 1	Input 2	EXCLUSIVE-OR Output	EXCLUSIVE-NOR Output
=====	=====	=====	=====
0	0	0	1
0	1	1	0
1	0	1	0
1	1	0	1

EXCLUSIVE-OR and EXCLUSIVE-NOR gates can be used in Circuit Shop's [digital analysis](#)³² function.

Farad

Definition: The measure of capacitance in an electric circuit. One Farad of [capacitance](#)⁸³ causes one [ampere](#)⁸¹ of [current](#)⁸⁴ to flow when the applied [voltage](#)⁹⁵ is changing at a rate of one volt per second.



Field Effect Transistor (FET) [\(toolkit](#)⁵² - [sub-toolkit](#))⁵⁵

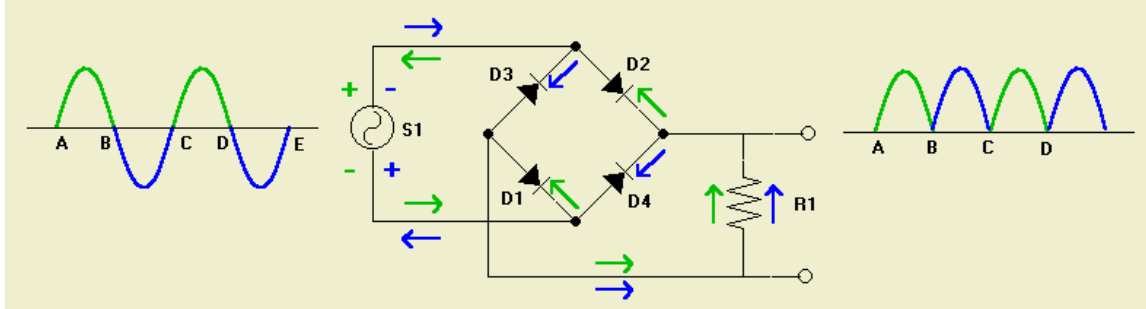
Definition: An active [semiconductor](#)⁹³ device having three electrodes. In the above icon, starting with the electrode with the arrow, in a clockwise direction, the electrodes are called the [gate](#), [drain](#) and [source](#). The [resistance](#)⁹² between the drain and the source depends the [voltage](#)⁹⁵ applied to the gate.

Frequency

Definition: The number of cycles per second of an [alternating current](#)⁸¹ measured in [hertz](#).⁸⁸

Full-wave Rectifier

Definition: A circuit which turns all of an input [alternating current](#),⁸¹ into pulsating [direct current](#).⁸⁶



Further full-wave rectifier circuit details can be found in [diode exercise examples](#).²⁷¹



Fuse [\(toolkit](#)⁵² - [sub-toolkit](#))⁵⁹


Definition: A protective device which breaks the path in an electrical circuit when the [current](#)⁸⁴ exceeds the rated value.



General Meter [\(toolkit](#)⁵² - [sub-toolkit](#))⁶¹

Definition: A graphical representation of a circuit meter.



Note: Use the text tool  on the [paint toolkit](#)⁵⁴ to add [V](#), [A](#) or [OHM](#) annotations to the center of the general meter to indicate a voltmeter, ammeter or ohmmeter respectively.



Chassis Ground



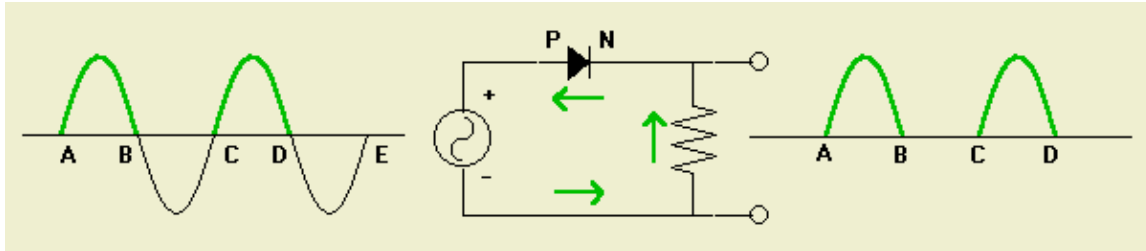
Earth Ground [\(toolkit](#)⁵² - [sub-toolkit](#))⁵⁶

Definition: The voltage reference in the circuit. There may or may not be an actual connection to the earth.

Ground points can be used in Circuit Shop's [DC analysis](#),²² [sinusoidal steady state analysis](#)²⁵ and [frequency response](#)²⁷ capabilities.

Half-wave Rectifier

Definition: A circuit which turns one half of an input [alternating current](#),⁸¹ into pulsating [direct current](#).⁸⁶



Further half-wave rectifier circuit details can be found in [diode exercise examples](#).²⁷¹

Henry

Definition: The measure of inductance in an electric circuit. One Henry of [inductance](#)⁸⁸ causes one [volt](#)⁹⁵ of counter electromotive force when the circuit [current](#)⁸⁴ is changing at a rate of one [ampere](#)⁸¹ per second.

Hertz

Definition: The usual measure of [frequency](#)⁸⁷ in an [alternating current](#)⁸¹ circuit. One hertz is equal to one cycle per second.



Ideal Operational Amplifier (Op Amp) [\(toolkit](#)⁵² - [sub-toolkit](#))⁶¹

Definition: A model of an [operational amplifier](#)⁹⁰ used in circuit analysis. An ideal operational amplifier has infinite gain, infinite input resistance and zero output resistance.

Ideal operational amplifiers can be used in Circuit Shop's [sinusoidal steady state analysis](#)²⁵ and [frequency response](#)²⁷ capabilities.

Impedance

Definition: The total [resistance](#)⁹² and [reactance](#)⁹² a device or circuit offers to an [alternating current](#)⁸¹ at a specific [frequency](#).⁸⁷ Impedance is measured in [ohms](#).⁹⁰

Inductance

Definition: The property of a circuit which impedes a change in [current](#).⁸⁴ [Inductors](#)⁸⁹ are the usual source of inductance. Inductance is measured in [henrys](#).⁸⁸ In electronic circuits, the usual measure of inductance is henrys (H), millihenrys (mH) or microhenrys (μ H), 1, 1e-3 or 1e-6 henrys respectively.

Inductive Reactance

Definition: The opposition to the flow of [alternating current](#)⁸¹ by a [inductor](#).⁸⁹ Inductive reactance is proportional to the amount [inductance](#)⁸⁸ of the inductor and the circuit [frequency](#).⁸⁷ In other words, as the inductance or frequency increases, the opposition to AC current flow increases. Like [resistance](#).⁹² inductive reactance is measured in [ohms](#).⁹⁰

$$X_L = 2\pi fL$$

Where: X_L = inductive reactance in ohms
 $2\pi \cong 6.28$ (radians in 360 degrees)
 f = frequency in hertz
 L = inductance in henries



Inductor [\(toolkit⁵² - sub-toolkit⁶⁰\)](#)

Definition: A device connected into an electrical circuit to introduce a specified [inductance⁸⁸](#).

Inductors can be used in Circuit Shop's [sinusoidal steady state analysis²⁵](#) and [frequency response²⁷](#) capabilities.



Integrated Circuit (IC) [\(toolkit⁵¹\)](#)

Definition: An electronic circuit composed of many [transistors⁹⁴](#) and other devices on a single, very small silicon chip or wafer. The silicon chip is encased in a protective package with connecting pins that are used to connect to other external devices.

Circuit Shop allows devices and objects, including other integrated circuits, to be imbedded inside an integrated circuit. See [creating circuits inside ICs²⁰](#).

ICs can also be used in Circuit Shop's [circuit analysis²²](#) functions:

- [DC analysis²²](#)
- [Sinusoidal steady state analysis²⁵](#)
- [Frequency response²⁷](#)
- [Digital analysis³²](#)

Kirchoff's Current Law

Definition: The sum of the branch [currents⁸⁴](#) entering a node is equal to the sum of the currents leaving a node.

Kirchoff's Voltage Law

Definition: The sum of the [voltage⁹⁵](#) rises around a circuit loop is equal to the sum of the voltage drops around the loop.



Lamp [\(toolkit⁵² - sub-toolkit⁶¹\)](#)

Definition: A light producing device.



Light Emitting Diode (LED) [\(toolkit⁵² - sub-toolkit⁵⁶\)](#)

Definition: A special type of [diode⁸⁵](#) which produces light when [current⁸⁴](#) flows in the forward direction.



Microphone [\(toolkit⁵² - sub-toolkit⁵⁷\)](#)

Definition: An electroacoustic transducer which converts acoustic power into [electrical power⁹¹](#) with approximately the same waveform as the acoustic input.



Metal-Oxide-Semiconductor Field Effect Transistor (MOSFET) [\(toolkit⁵² - sub-toolkit⁵⁵\)](#)

Definition: A special type of [field effect transistor⁸⁶](#) with a higher input [impedance⁸⁸](#).

Mutual Inductance

Definition: The property between two [current⁸⁴](#) carrying coils, or [inductors⁸⁹](#), when the magnetic field of one coil links with the magnetic field of the second coil. For a given rate of change of current in one coil, the amount of mutual inductance determines the amount of electromotive force, or [voltage⁹⁵](#) induced in the second coil.



NOT Gate [\(toolkit⁵¹\)](#)

Definition: A single input digital device whose output level is the reverse of the input level. For example, if the input level is [HIGH](#), (logic level 1) the output is [LOW](#), (logic level 0).

Input	Output
=====	=====
0	1
1	0

NOT gates can be used in Circuit Shop's [digital analysis³²](#) function.

Ohm

Definition: The usual measure of resistance in an electric circuit. One Ohm of [resistance⁹²](#) in a conductor allows one [ampere⁸¹](#) of [current⁸⁴](#) to flow when one [volt⁹⁵](#) of electromotive force is applied.

Ohm's Law

Definition: The [current⁸⁴](#) in an electric circuit is inversely proportional to the [resistance⁹²](#) of the circuit and is directly proportional to the electromotive force (or [voltage⁹⁵](#)) in the circuit.

In equation form

$$I \text{ (amperes)} = \frac{E \text{ (volts)}}{R \text{ (ohms)}}$$

Where: I = the circuit current in [amperes⁸¹](#)
 E = the applied voltage in [volts⁹⁵](#)
 R = the circuit resistance in [ohms⁹⁰](#)

Alternative equation forms

$$E \text{ (volts)} = I \text{ (amperes)} \times R \text{ (ohms)}$$

$$R \text{ (ohms)} = \frac{E \text{ (volts)}}{I \text{ (amps)}}$$



Operational Amplifier (Op Amp) [\(toolkit⁵² - sub-toolkit⁶¹\)](#)

Definition: A general purpose high-gain amplifier to which feedback components are added in various configurations to perform various functions such as differential amplifier, differentiator and integrator.

Related topic:

[Ideal operational amplifier⁸⁸](#)



OR Gate



NOR Gate [\(toolkit⁵¹\)](#)

Definition: An OR gate is a digital device with a HIGH output (logic level 1) if any input is HIGH.

A NOR (NOT OR) gate is an inverted OR gate.

Input 1 =====	Input 2 =====	OR Output =====	NOR Output =====
0	0	0	1
0	1	1	0
1	0	1	0
1	1	1	0

OR and NOR gates can be used in Circuit Shop's [digital analysis³²](#) function.

Parallel Circuit

Definition: A circuit which contains more than one path for the [current⁸⁴](#) to flow through.

Phase

Definition: In a periodic function or sine wave, the fraction of the total period measured from a fixed point. E.g. a sine wave traverses through 360 degrees, if a cycle starts, i.e. crosses the zero axis 1/4 of the way into a period, it is said to have a phase of 90 degrees.



Two Prong Female and Male Plug



Three Prong Female and Male Plug [\(toolkit⁵² - sub-toolkit⁵⁷\)](#)

Definition: A device, with pins or receptacles which can complete a connection in an electrical circuit usually associated with 120 or 220 volts.



Plug In [\(toolkit⁵² - sub-toolkit⁵⁷\)](#)

Definition: A device, usually with pins which can complete a connection in an electrical circuit. A plug in device is usually associated with a [receptacle⁹²](#).

In Circuit Shop, plug ins are also used as connection points for [circuit analyzers³⁰](#).



Potentiometer (POT) [\(toolkit⁵² - sub-toolkit⁵⁹\)](#)

Definition: A three terminal electromechanical resistive device with two fixed end terminals and one terminal connected to an adjustable contact. The adjustable contact provides a variable [resistance](#).⁹²

Power

Definition: The rate of doing work. In an electrical circuit, power is equal to the applied [voltage](#)⁹⁵ times the resulting [current](#).⁸⁴ Power is measured in [watts](#)⁹⁵ in honor of James Watt, the Scottish mechanical engineer who invented the steam engine. One watt of electrical power is equal to one [volt](#)⁹⁵ multiplied by one [ampere](#).⁸¹



Push Button

- Normally Open



- Normally Closed

([toolkit](#)⁵² - [sub-toolkit](#))⁵⁹

Definition: A device which momentarily completes (normally open) or breaks (normally closed) the [current](#)⁸⁴ path in an electrical circuit.

Reactance

Definition: The opposition to the flow of [alternating current](#).⁸¹ by [capacitors](#)⁸² ([capacitive reactance](#))⁸³ and [inductors](#)⁸⁹ ([inductive reactance](#)).⁸⁸



Receptacle ([toolkit](#)⁵² - [sub-toolkit](#))⁵⁷

Definition: A device, usually stationary with sockets which can complete a connection in an electrical circuit. A receptacle is usually associated with a [plug in](#).⁹¹

In Circuit Shop, receptacles are also used as connection points for [circuit analyzers](#).³⁰

Rectification

Definition: The process of turning [alternating current](#),⁸¹ i.e. [current](#)⁸⁴ that flows in both directions, into pulsating [direct current](#).⁸⁶ i.e. current that only flows in one direction.

Example [half-wave rectifier](#)⁸⁷ and [full-wave rectifier](#)⁸⁷ circuits can be found in [diode exercise examples](#).²⁷¹



Relay

- Normally Open



- Normally Closed

([toolkit](#)⁵² - [sub-toolkit](#))⁵⁹

Definition: An electromechanical switching device consisting of a coil and an armature. Depending on the relay type, the armature has contacts which are normally open or closed. A [voltage](#)⁹⁵ applied to the coil causes the armature to move and the contacts are either closed (from normally open) or opened (from normally closed).



Resistor ([toolkit](#)⁵² - [sub-toolkit](#))⁵⁹

Definition: A device connected into an electrical circuit to introduce a specified [resistance](#).⁹²

Resistors can be used in Circuit Shop's [DC analysis](#),²² [sinusoidal steady state analysis](#)²⁵ and [frequency response](#)²⁷ capabilities.

Resistance

Definition: The property of a conductor which impedes the passage of electric [current](#).⁸⁴ Resistance is measured in [ohms](#)⁹⁰ in honor of the German physicist George Simon Ohm who investigated and formulated the relationship between [voltage](#),⁹⁵ [current](#)⁸⁴ and [resistance](#)⁹² ([Ohm's law](#)⁹⁰).

Resonant Frequency

Definition: The value of [frequency](#),⁸⁷ which causes the circuit's [inductive reactance](#)⁸⁸ to equal the [capacitive reactance](#).⁸³ The resonant frequency can be calculated using the following formula

$$fr = \frac{1}{2\pi \times \text{SQRT}(LC)}$$

Where: fr = resonant frequency in hertz
 $2\pi \cong 6.283$ (radians in 360 degrees)
L = inductance in henries
C = capacitance in farads

Semiconductor

Definition: A material with a [resistance](#)⁹² between metals and insulators. In other words, a semiconductor has a resistance somewhere between that of a good conductor and poor conductor.

Series Circuit

Definition: A circuit which contains only one possible path for the [current](#)⁸⁴ to flow through.



Silicon Controlled Rectifier (SCR) ([toolkit](#)⁵² - [sub-toolkit](#))⁵⁶

Definition: A special type of [diode](#)⁸⁵ with an additional electrode called a gate. A [voltage](#)⁹⁵ applied to the gate will turn the SCR on and allow [current](#)⁸⁴ to flow. In the above icon, the left, right and bottom electrodes are called the anode, cathode and gate respectively.



Speaker ([toolkit](#)⁵² - [sub-toolkit](#))⁵⁷

Definition: An electroacoustic transducer which converts [electrical power](#)⁹¹ into acoustic power into the air with approximately the same waveform as the electrical input.



Switch ([toolkit](#)⁵² - [sub-toolkit](#))⁵⁹

Definition: A device which breaks or completes the [current](#)⁸⁴ path in an electrical circuit, or depending on the type of switch, sends the current in a different path. The above icon shows a single-pole single-throw (SPST) switch.

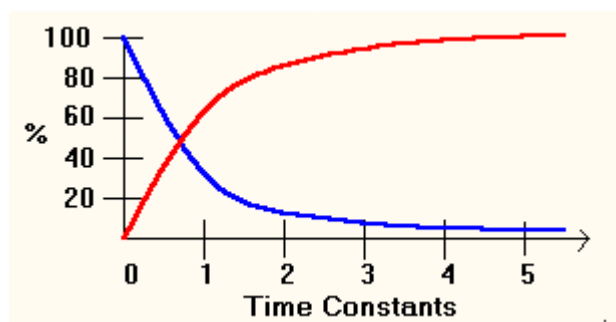


Terminal ([toolkit](#)⁵² - [sub-toolkit](#))⁵⁷

Definition: A point of connection for two or more electrical circuit conductors.

Terminals can be used in Circuit Shop's [sinusoidal steady state analysis](#)²⁵ and [frequency response](#)²⁷ capabilities. In Circuit Shop, terminals are used as connection points for [device meters](#)²⁹ and [circuit analyzers](#).³⁰

Terminals are also used to associate [integrated circuit \(IC\)](#)⁸⁹ pins to input/output points of the IC's internal circuit. See [creating circuits inside integrated circuits](#).²⁰



Time Constant

Definition: For a resistor-capacitor circuit

- if charging, one time constant is the amount time for the capacitor [voltage](#)⁹⁵ to reach 63% of its final value. After five time constant seconds, the capacitor will reach 99% of its final value.
- if discharging, one time constant is the amount of time for the capacitor [voltage](#)⁹⁵ to reach 37% of its initial value. After five time constant seconds, the capacitor will reach 1% of its initial value.



Transformer [\(toolkit](#)⁵² - [sub-toolkit](#))⁶⁰

Definition: A device which uses electromagnetic induction to transfer [energy](#)⁸⁶ from one circuit to another at the same frequency but with different [voltage](#)⁹⁵ and [current](#).⁸⁴

Transformers can be used in Circuit Shop's [sinusoidal steady state analysis](#)²⁵ and [frequency response](#)²⁷ capabilities.



Transistor [\(toolkit](#)⁵² - [sub-toolkit](#))⁵⁵

Definition: An active [semiconductor](#)⁹³ device, usually made of silicon and usually having three electrodes. In the above icon, starting with the electrode with the arrow, in a clockwise direction, the electrodes are called the [emitter](#), [base](#) and [collector](#).

Truth Table

Definition: A table usually used in [digital circuits](#)⁸⁴ to show a device's output(s) for all possible input values.



For example, the truth table for an [AND gate](#)⁸² is shown below.

Input 1	Input 2	AND Output
=====	=====	=====
0	0	0
0	1	0
1	0	0
1	1	1



Tunnel Diode ([toolkit](#)⁵² - [sub-toolkit](#))⁵⁶

Definition: A special type of [diode](#)⁸⁵ which has the characteristic that for a certain [voltage](#)⁹⁵ range, as the voltage increases the [current](#)⁸⁴ decreases. In other words, for a certain voltage range, as the voltage increases the [resistance](#)⁹² also increases, thus allowing less current to flow. This voltage range is called the "negative resistance region."

Vertex

Definition: A point along a [wire](#)⁹⁵ or line where the direction changes.

Voltage

Definition: The usual measure of electromotive force in a circuit. One Volt is the amount of energy supplied to an electric circuit in one second to produce one [ampere](#)⁸¹ of electric [current](#)⁸⁴ in the circuit.



Voltage-Controlled Current Source (VCCS) ([toolkit](#)⁵² - [sub-toolkit](#))⁵⁸

Definition: A special type of [current](#)⁸⁴ source whose output current is equal to the input [voltage](#)⁹⁵ multiplied by a constant. In the above icon, the output current flowing between the two right hand side terminals is equal to the input voltage across the two left hand terminals multiplied by a constant.

Voltage-controlled current sources can be used in Circuit Shop's [sinusoidal steady state analysis](#)²⁵ and [frequency response](#)²⁷ capabilities.



Voltage-Controlled Voltage Source (VCVS) ([toolkit](#)⁵² - [sub-toolkit](#))⁵⁸

Definition: A special type of [voltage](#)⁹⁵ source whose output voltage is equal to the input voltage multiplied by a constant. In the above icon, the output voltage across the two right hand side terminals is equal to the input voltage across the two left hand terminals multiplied by a constant.

Voltage-controlled voltage sources can be used in Circuit Shop's [sinusoidal steady state analysis](#)²⁵ and [frequency response](#)²⁷ capabilities.

Watt

Definition: The usual measure of [power](#)⁹¹ in an electric circuit. One watt of electrical power is equal to one [volt](#)⁹⁵ multiplied by one [ampere](#)⁸¹.

Watt-hour

Definition: The usual measure of [energy](#)⁸⁶ in an electric circuit. One watt-hour is equivalent to one [watt](#)⁹⁵ of power used for one hour.



Wire ([toolbar](#)³⁷ - [toolkit](#))⁵²

Definition: One solid conductor or several conductors stranded together with a low [resistance](#)⁹² to [current](#)⁸⁴ flow. Usually made from copper and insulated.

In Circuit Shop, the [digital analysis](#)³² function will highlight wires that are **HIGH** (logic level **1**).



Zener Diode ([toolkit](#)⁵² - [sub-toolkit](#))⁵⁶

Definition: A special type of [diode](#)⁸⁵ which maintains a constant [voltage](#)⁹⁵ across its terminals. Zener diodes are used in [voltage](#)⁹⁵ regulator circuits. In the above icon, the left and right electrodes are called the [anode](#) and [cathode](#) respectively.

Circuit Shop Tutorial v1.09 - March 2000
Copyright © 1997-2000 Cherrywood Systems.
All rights reserved.

This manual is a printed version of Circuit Shop's help file. There are two parts to the manual:

- The first part lists the help topics which make up Circuit Shop's reference manual. Pages in this portion are numbered **1** through **95**.
- The second part lists the topics which make up Circuit Shop's tutorial. Pages in this portion are numbered **200** through **297**.

In the on-line help system, help topics are selected by clicking on a highlighted word or set of words in a topic. In this manual, topics are referenced as page number footnotes. In other words, a footnote specifies the page number where the topic can be found. For example, the footnote on the following text, Purchasing information⁷ indicates the topic can be found on page **7**.

Tutorial Help Topics

An overview and structure of Circuit Shop tutorials can be found in [general tutorial introduction and instructions](#).²⁰¹

Circuit Shop contains the following tutorials:

- [Resistors and simple circuits](#)²⁰⁵
- [Capacitors, inductors and transformers](#)²³⁷
- [Alternating Current](#)²⁵⁵
- [Semiconductors](#)²⁷⁰
- [Digital circuits](#)²⁸²

A roadmap of Circuit Shop's tutorial help topics can be found in [tutorial topic tree](#)²⁰³

Related topics:

[Topic tree](#)³

General Tutorial Introduction and Instructions

Each tutorial is structured in a consistent manner and consists of several exercises, and each exercise consists of several topics. For example the

[Resistors and Simple Circuits Tutorial](#)²⁰⁵ consists of:

[Ohm's law exercise](#)²⁰⁵
[Series circuit exercise](#)²¹²
[Parallel circuit exercise](#)²²¹
[Power and energy exercise](#)²³⁰

Each exercise is structured in a consistent manner. Where applicable, the exercise consists of the following topics: theory, examples, demonstration circuit and detailed demonstration circuit construction. Each exercise also has a knowledge test topic with answers to selected questions. For example the

[Ohm's law exercise](#)²⁰⁵ consists of:

[Theory](#)²⁰⁶
[Examples](#)²⁰⁶
[Demonstration circuit](#)²⁰⁷
[Demonstration circuit construction](#)²⁰⁹
[Knowledge test](#)²¹⁰

To keep track of where you are in a tutorial, print the [tutorial topic tree](#)²⁰³ using the above Circuit Shop Help window [File | Print Topic](#) menu command and tick off the exercises as they are completed.

Within a tutorial, each exercise builds on the previous, thus it is recommended that the tutorial be completed from beginning to end.

If your terminal screen is large enough, move the help window to one side and the Circuit Shop application window to the other. If both the help window and the Circuit Shop application window cannot be shown without an overlap, resize the help window to cover approximately one half of the screen. While working through the tutorial, you will have to switch from one window to another.

Alternatively, before starting an exercise, select the topic on the [tutorial topic tree](#)²⁰³ and print the exercise using the above [File | Print Topic](#) command. The hardcopy can be used to add personal notes to the exercise.

Related topics:

[Tutorial topic tree](#)²⁰³

Tutorial Topic Tree

The following topic tree shows the structure of and provides quick access to the various tutorial topics.

[General tutorial introduction and instructions](#)²⁰¹

[Resistors and Simple Circuits Tutorial](#)²⁰⁵

[Ohm's law exercise](#)²⁰⁵

[Theory](#)²⁰⁶

[Examples](#)²⁰⁶

[Demonstration circuit](#)²⁰⁷

[Demonstration circuit construction](#)²⁰⁹

[Knowledge test](#)²¹⁰

[Series circuit exercise](#)²¹²

[Theory](#)²¹²

[Series circuit power](#)²³²

[Examples](#)²¹³

[Demonstration circuit](#)²¹⁵

[Demonstration circuit construction](#)²¹⁷

[Knowledge test](#)²¹⁹

[Parallel circuit exercise](#)²²¹

[Theory](#)²²¹

[Parallel circuit power](#)²³³

[Examples](#)²²³

[Demonstration circuit](#)²²⁵

[Demonstration circuit construction](#)²²⁶

[Knowledge test](#)²²⁸

[Power and energy exercise](#)²³⁰

[Power - theory](#)²³⁰

[Series circuit power](#)²³²

[Parallel circuit power](#)²³³

[Power - examples](#)²³¹

[Energy - theory](#)²³⁴

[Energy - examples](#)²³⁵

[Knowledge test](#)²³⁵

[Capacitors, Inductors and Transformers](#)²³⁷

[Capacitor exercise](#)²³⁷

[Theory](#)²³⁸

[Capacitors in series and parallel](#)²³⁹

[Capacitor circuit time constant](#)²⁴⁰

[Examples](#)²⁴⁰

[Knowledge test](#)²⁴²

[Inductor exercise](#)²⁴⁴

[Theory](#)²⁴⁴

[Inductors in series and parallel](#)²⁴⁵

[Inductor circuit time constant](#)²⁴⁶

[Examples](#)²⁴⁷

[Knowledge test](#)²⁴⁹

[Transformer exercise](#)²⁵¹

[Theory](#)²⁵¹

[Examples](#)²⁵³

[Knowledge test](#)²⁵³

[Alternating Current](#)²⁵⁵

[Basic alternating current principles exercise](#)²⁵⁵

[Theory](#)²⁵⁶

[Examples](#)²⁵⁷

[Knowledge test](#)²⁵⁸

[Capacitors and inductors in AC circuits exercise](#)²⁶¹

[Theory](#)²⁶¹

[Examples](#)²⁶¹

[Knowledge test](#)²⁶¹

[Series resistor-inductor-capacitor \(RLC\) circuits exercise](#)²⁶²

[Theory](#)²⁶²

[Examples](#)²⁶⁴

[Demonstration circuit](#)²⁶⁴

[Demonstration circuit construction](#)²⁶⁶

[Knowledge test](#)²⁶⁹

[Semiconductors](#)²⁷⁰

[Diode exercise](#)²⁷⁰

[Theory](#)²⁷⁰

[Examples](#)²⁷¹

[Knowledge test](#)²⁷³

[Transistor exercise](#)²⁷⁴

[Theory](#)²⁷⁴

[Examples](#)²⁷⁶

[Knowledge test](#)²⁸⁰

[Digital circuits](#)²⁸²

[Logic gate exercise](#)²⁸²

[Theory](#)²⁸²

[Examples](#)²⁸⁵

[Demonstration circuit](#)²⁸⁷

[Demonstration circuit construction](#)²⁸⁸

[Knowledge test](#)²⁹⁰

Related Topics:

[Topic tree](#)³

Resistors and Simple Circuits Tutorial

This tutorial covers the following topics:

- [Ohm's law](#)⁹⁰ and the relationship between [resistance](#)⁹², [voltage](#)⁹⁵ and [current](#)⁸⁴.
- The properties of [series](#)⁹³ and [parallel](#)⁹¹ circuits.
- [Power](#)⁹¹ and [energy](#)⁸⁶.

Exercises:

[Ohm's Law](#)²⁰⁵

[Series Circuits](#)²¹²

[Parallel Circuits](#)²²¹

[Power and Energy](#)²³⁰

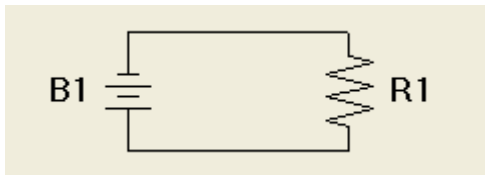
Related topics:

[General tutorial introduction and instructions](#)²⁰¹

[Tutorial topic tree](#)²⁰³

Resistors and Simple Circuits Tutorial

Ohm's Law Exercise



Theory

The Ohm's law equation and the relationship between voltage, current and resistance can be found in [theory](#)²⁰⁶.

Examples

The use of Ohm's law to determine a circuit's current, voltage or resistance can be found in [examples](#)²⁰⁶.

Demonstration

[Ohm's law demonstration](#)²⁰⁷ provides instructions to construct a simple Circuit Shop circuit to show the relationships between voltage, current and resistance.

Knowledge test

Review questions can be found in [knowledge test](#)²¹⁰.

Related topics:

[Ohm's law theory](#)²⁰⁶

[Ohm's law examples](#)²⁰⁶

[Ohm's law demonstration circuit](#)²⁰⁷

[Ohm's law demonstration circuit construction](#)²⁰⁹

[Ohm's law knowledge test](#)²¹⁰

[Ohm's law](#)⁹⁰

[Voltage](#)⁹⁵

[Current](#)⁸⁴

[Resistance](#)⁹²

[Tutorial topic tree](#)²⁰³

Resistors and Simple Circuits Tutorial

Ohm's Law Exercise

Theory

The relationship between [voltage](#)⁹⁵, [current](#)⁸⁴ and [resistance](#)⁹² is fundamental to electricity and electronics. [Ohm's law](#)⁹⁰ defines this relationship. Ohm's law states

- The current in a circuit is directly proportional to the applied voltage. In other words, the greater the voltage, the greater the current.
- The current in a circuit is inversely proportional to the resistance in the circuit. In other words, the greater the resistance, the lower the current.

In equation form

$$I \text{ (amperes)} = \frac{E \text{ (volts)}}{R \text{ (ohms)}}$$

where

I = the circuit current in [amperes](#)⁸¹
 E = the applied voltage in [volts](#)⁹⁵
 R = the circuit resistance in [ohms](#)⁹⁰

The above equation can be arranged as

$$E = I \times R \quad I = \frac{E}{R} \quad R = \frac{E}{I}$$

Using the various forms of the Ohm's law equation, if any two variables are known, the third variable can be determined. See [Ohm's law examples](#).²⁰⁶

When using Ohm's law, all variable values must be in the same basic units, for example E in volts, I in amperes and R in ohms. See [unit conversion](#).⁷⁵

Related topics:

[Ohm's law exercise](#)²⁰⁵

[Ohm's law examples](#)²⁰⁶

[Ohm's law demonstration circuit](#)²⁰⁷

[Ohm's law knowledge test](#)²¹⁰

[Ohm's law](#)⁹⁰

[Voltage](#)⁹⁵

[Current](#)⁸⁴

[Resistance](#)⁹²

Resistors and Simple Circuits Tutorial

Ohm's Law Exercise

Examples

Example 1

Given a current of [1 ampere](#) and a resistance of [100 ohms](#) in a circuit, what is the applied voltage?

$$\begin{aligned} E &= I \times R \\ &= 1 \times 100 \\ &= 100 \text{ volts} \end{aligned}$$

Example 2

Given a voltage of [200 volts](#) and a resistance of [50 ohms](#) in a circuit, what is the current in the circuit?

$$I = \frac{E}{R} = \frac{200}{50} = 4 \text{ amperes}$$

Example 3

Given a voltage of 150 volts and a current of 25 amperes in a circuit, what is the resistance in the circuit?

$$R = \frac{E}{I} = \frac{150}{25} = 6 \text{ ohms}$$

Related topics:

[Ohm's law theory](#)²⁰⁶

[Ohm's law exercise](#)²⁰⁵

[Ohm's law knowledge test](#)²¹⁰

[Ohm's law](#)⁹⁰

[Voltage](#)⁹⁵

[Current](#)⁸⁴

[Resistance](#)⁹²

Resistors and Simple Circuits Tutorial

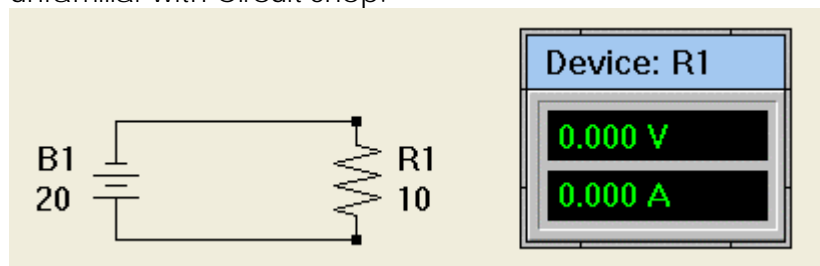
Ohm's Law Exercise

Demonstration Circuit

This circuit demonstrates [Ohm's law](#)⁹⁰ and shows the relationship between [voltage](#)⁹⁵, [current](#)⁸⁴ and [resistance](#)⁹².

Step 1 - construct the circuit

Use Circuit Shop tools to construct the following circuit. See [detailed instructions](#)²⁰⁹ if you are unfamiliar with Circuit Shop.




Step 2 - analyse the circuit

Use the [Tool | Analyse](#)⁴⁶ menu command or the [toolbar](#)³⁷ icon  to analyse the circuit. [Analysing a circuit](#)¹⁹ provides additional details.

If the circuit has been correctly constructed and the device meter correctly linked to the resistor, after the analyse command has been executed, the device meter should display 20 [volts](#)⁹⁵ and 2 [amps](#)⁸¹. In the circuit, battery B1 applies 20 volts across resistor R1 causing a current of 2 amps to flow. Using [Ohm's law](#)⁹⁰ the [current](#)⁸⁴ through the resistor may be calculated as follows:


$$I = \frac{E}{R} = \frac{20}{10} = 2 \text{ amperes}$$

Step 3 - increase the voltage

1. Using the mouse, click the pointer icon  on the [toolbar](#)³⁷ or the [analog device toolkit](#)⁵².
2. Move the mouse onto the diagram over the battery.
3. Double click the mouse on the battery to open the [Edit Device dialog box](#).⁶⁴ [Modifying device values](#)¹⁶ provides additional details.

- In the value field, enter 30 as the battery's new value.




- Use the [Tool | Analyse](#)⁴⁶ menu command or the [toolbar](#)³⁷ icon  to analyse the circuit.
- After the analyse command has been executed, the device meter should display 30 [volts](#)⁹⁵ and 3 [amps](#).⁸¹ In the circuit, battery B1 now applies 30 volts across resistor R1's 10 ohms causing a current of 3 amps to flow. Using [Ohm's law](#),⁹⁰ the [current](#)⁸⁴ through the resistor may be calculated as follows:

$$I = \frac{E}{R} = \frac{30}{10} = 3 \text{ amperes}$$


As stated by [Ohm's law](#),⁹⁰ the increase in voltage has increased the current flow in the circuit.

Step 4 - increase the resistance



- Using the mouse, click the pointer icon  on the [toolbar](#)³⁷ or the [analog device toolkit](#).⁵²
- Move the mouse onto the diagram over the resistor.
- Double click the mouse on the resistor to open the [Edit Device dialog box](#).⁶⁴ [Modifying device values](#)¹⁶ provides additional details.
- In the value field, enter 60 as the resistor's new value.



- Use the [Tool | Analyse](#)⁴⁶ menu command or the [toolbar](#)³⁷ icon  to analyse the circuit.
- After the analyse command has been executed, the device meter should display 30 [volts](#)⁹⁵ and 500 [milli amps](#).⁸¹ In the circuit, battery B1 applies 30 volts across resistor R1's 60 ohms causing a current of 500 milli amps to flow. Using [Ohm's law](#),⁹⁰ the [current](#)⁸⁴ through the resistor may be calculated as follows:

$$I = \frac{E}{R} = \frac{30}{60} = 0.5 \text{ amperes} \\ = 500 \text{ milli amps}$$

As stated by [Ohm's law](#),⁹⁰ the increase in resistance has decreased the current flow in the circuit.

Related topics:

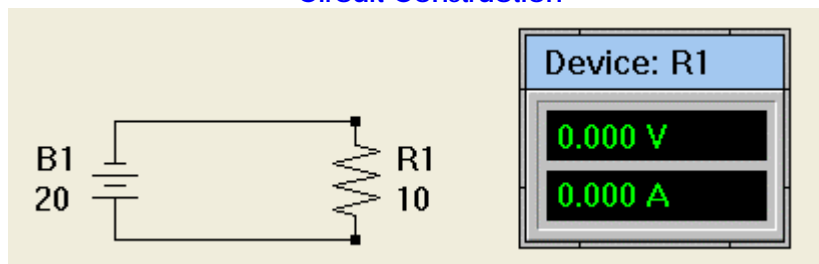
[Resistors and Simple Circuits - Tutorial](#)²⁰⁵
[Ohm's law exercise](#)²⁰⁵
[Ohm's law theory](#)²⁰⁶
[Ohm's law examples](#)²⁰⁶
[Ohm's law demonstration circuit construction](#)²⁰⁹
[Ohm's law knowledge test](#)²¹⁰
[Ohm's law](#)⁹⁰
[Voltage](#)⁹⁵
[Current](#)⁸⁴
[Resistance](#)⁹²

Resistors and Simple Circuits Tutorial

Ohm's Law Exercise

Demonstration Circuit


Circuit Construction




This topic provides detailed instructions to construct the Ohm's law demonstration circuit shown in the title bar above.

Open a diagram window and display the analog device toolkit:




1. Use the [File | New](#)³⁹ menu command or the [toolbar](#)³⁷ icon  to open a new diagram window. [Creating a new diagram window](#)¹⁵ provides additional details.
2. Ensure the [analog device toolkit](#)⁵² is visible. If the toolkit is not visible, use the [View | Analog](#)



[Device Toolkit](#)⁴⁹ menu command or the toolbar icon  to display it.


Add a resistor to the diagram:



1. Using the mouse, click the resistor icon  on the [analog device toolkit](#).⁵²
2. Move the mouse onto the diagram to approximately the center of the diagram window.
3. Click the mouse to place the resistor on the diagram. [Adding devices](#)¹² provides additional details.


Add a battery to the diagram:



1. Using the mouse, click the battery icon  on the [analog device toolkit](#).⁵²
2. Move the mouse onto the diagram to where the battery is to be located. See circuit layout in title bar.
3. Click the mouse to place the battery on the diagram.


Layout the circuit and rotate the devices:



1. Using the mouse, click the pointer icon  on the [toolbar](#)³⁷ or the [analog device toolkit](#).⁵²
2. If necessary, move either the resistor or battery so they are horizontally aligned. See circuit layout in title bar. To move a device, press the left mouse button over a device and drag it to the new location. [Moving devices](#)¹⁷ provides additional details.
3. By default, Circuit Shop places resistors and batteries on a diagram in a horizontal orientation. To rotate the resistor, press the left mouse button over one of the resistor terminals and drag it to a vertical orientation. [Rotating devices](#)¹⁸ provides additional details.
4. Repeat step (3) to rotate the battery. After this step, both devices should be side by side and vertically aligned as shown in the title bar above.

Add wires to connect the devices:



1. Using the mouse, click the wire icon  on the [toolbar](#)³⁷ or the [analog device toolkit](#).⁵²
2. Move the mouse onto the diagram over the top battery terminal.

3. Press the left mouse button and drag the wire to the top resistor terminal. [Connecting devices](#)¹⁴ provides additional details.
4. Repeat steps (2) and (3) to connect the bottom device terminals. At this point the circuit connections are complete and should look as shown in the title bar above.

Add ids and values to the devices:



1. Using the mouse, click the pointer icon on the [toolbar](#)³⁷ or the [analog device toolkit](#).⁵²
2. Move the mouse onto the diagram over the resistor.
3. Double click the mouse on the resistor to open the [Edit Device dialog box](#).⁶⁴ [Modifying device values](#)¹⁶ provides additional details.
4. Enter 1 as the resistor id and 10 ohms as its value.
5. Repeat step (3) on the battery and enter 1 as the battery id and 20 volts as its value.
6. Because of the vertical device orientation, the displayed ids and values, called annotations, need to be moved. See the circuit layout in title bar above for suggested annotation locations. To move an annotation, press the left mouse button over the annotation and drag it to the new location. [Moving objects](#)¹⁷ provides additional details.

At this point the circuit is complete. The devices have been added, wires have been added to connect the devices, and their ids and values have been defined.

Add a device meter to the diagram:



1. Using the mouse, click the [device meter](#)²⁹ icon on the [analog device toolkit](#).⁵²
2. Move the mouse onto the diagram to a position just to the right of the resistor as shown in the title bar above.
3. Click the mouse to place the meter on the diagram. [Adding objects](#)¹² provides additional details.

Link the meter to the resistor:



1. Using the mouse, click the pointer icon on the [toolbar](#)³⁷ or the [analog device toolkit](#).⁵²
2. Move the mouse onto the diagram over the [device meter](#).²⁹
3. Double click the mouse on the meter to open the [Edit Meter dialog box](#).⁶⁸ [Modifying object values](#)¹⁶ provides additional details.
4. To link the meter to the resistor, select [Resistor](#) as the device type and 1 as the id.

At this point the circuit construction is complete. Return to [Ohm's law demonstration](#)²⁰⁷ to complete the exercise.

Related topics:

[Creating and editing diagrams](#)¹¹
[Menu commands](#)³⁷
[Toolbar commands](#)³⁷
[Device and drawing toolkits](#)⁵¹
[Dialog boxes](#)⁶²

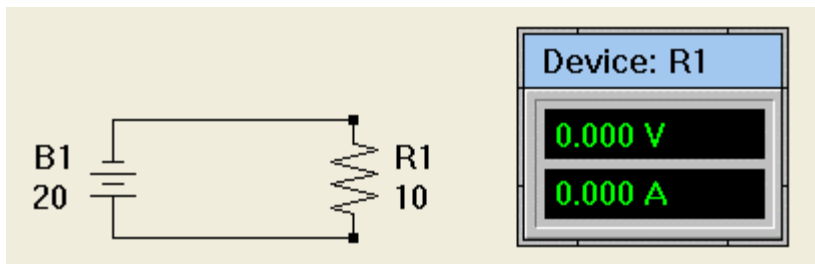
Resistors and Simple Circuits Tutorial

Ohm's Law Exercise

Knowledge test

1. Ohm's law states, the greater the voltage, the _____ the current. [\(answer\)\(3\)](#)²⁹¹
2. Ohm's law states, the greater the resistance, the _____ the current. [\(answer\)\(4\)](#)²⁹¹

3. Given a current of 0.5 amperes and a resistance of 2000 ohms in a circuit, what is the applied voltage? [\(answer\)\(5\)](#)²⁹¹
4. Given a current of 3 amperes and a resistance of 50 ohms in a circuit, what is the applied voltage?
5. Given a voltage of 50 volts and a resistance of 200 ohms in a circuit, what is the current in the circuit? [\(answer\)\(6\)](#)²⁹¹
6. Given a voltage of 150 volts and a resistance of 25 ohms in a circuit, what is the current in the circuit?
7. Given a voltage of 500 volts and a current of 50 amperes in a circuit, what is the resistance in the circuit? [\(answer\)\(7\)](#)²⁹¹
8. Given a voltage of 12 volts and a current of 0.05 amperes in a circuit, what is the resistance in the circuit?



9. Using the [Ohm's law demonstration circuit](#)²⁰⁷ with the following values
B1 = 24.5 volts
R1 = 215 ohms
 What is the current through R1? [\(answer\)\(8\)](#)²⁹¹
10. Confirm the above answer using the Ohm's law equation.

Related topics:

[Ohm's law theory](#)²⁰⁶

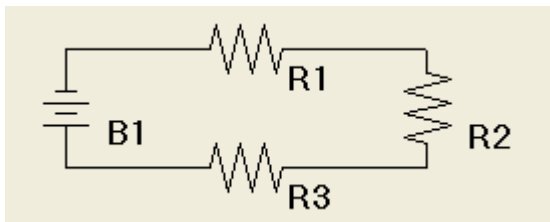
[Ohm's law examples](#)²⁰⁶

[Ohm's law exercise](#)²⁰⁵

[Resistors and Simple Circuits - Tutorial](#)²⁰⁵

Resistors and Simple Circuits Tutorial

Series Circuit Exercise



Theory

The relationship between voltage, current and resistance in a [series circuit](#)⁹³ can be found in [theory](#).²¹²

Examples

The use of Ohm's law to determine a series circuit's current, voltage or resistance can be found in [examples](#).²¹³

Demonstration

[Series circuit demonstration](#)²¹⁵ provides instructions to construct a simple Circuit Shop circuit to show the relationships between voltage, current and resistance in a series circuit.

Knowledge test

Review questions can be found in [knowledge test](#).²¹⁹

Related topics:

[Series circuit theory](#)²¹²

[Series circuit examples](#)²¹³

[Series circuit demonstration circuit](#)²¹⁵

[Series circuit demonstration circuit construction](#)²¹⁷

[Series circuit knowledge test](#)²¹⁹

[Parallel circuit exercise](#)²²¹

[Ohm's law exercise](#)²⁰⁵

[Series circuit](#)⁹³

[Parallel circuit](#)⁹¹

[Ohm's law](#)⁹⁰

[Voltage](#)⁹⁵

[Current](#)⁸⁴

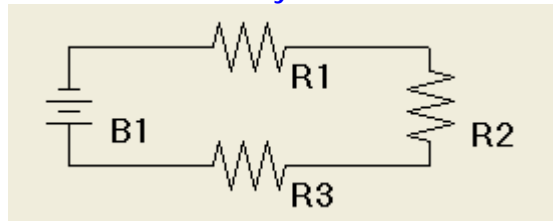
[Resistance](#)⁹²

[Tutorial topic tree](#)²⁰³

Resistors and Simple Circuits Tutorial

Series Circuit Exercise

Theory



A [series circuit](#)⁹³ is composed of circuit components connected end-to-end. A characteristic of a series circuit is that all circuit current flows through each circuit component. In other words, the same amount of current flows through each series circuit component.

Series circuit resistance

The total resistance in a series circuit is the sum of the individual resistances. In the above circuit

$$R \text{ (total)} = R1 + R2 + R3$$

In general, the total resistance for a series circuit with resistances $R1, R2, R3, R4, \dots$ is

$$R \text{ (total)} = R1 + R2 + R3 + R4 + \dots$$

Series circuit current

Using [Ohm's law](#),⁹⁰ the total current in a series circuit is equal to the total applied voltage divided by the total resistance. In the above circuit

$$I \text{ (total)} = \frac{E \text{ (total)}}{R \text{ (total)}}$$

Voltage drop

Using [Kirchoff's voltage law](#),⁸⁹ the sum of voltage drops around a series circuit is equal to the applied voltage.⁹⁵ Using the fact the same circuit current flows through each device, Ohm's law can be used to determine the voltage drop across each resistor.

$$\begin{aligned} E (R1) &= I \text{ (total)} \times R1 \\ E (R2) &= I \text{ (total)} \times R2 \\ E (R3) &= I \text{ (total)} \times R3 \end{aligned}$$

The sum of the of the voltage drops equal the applied voltage.

$$E (B1) = E (R1) + E (R2) + E (R3)$$

[Series circuit examples](#)²¹³ works through an example of the use of the above equations.

Power

[Series circuit power](#)²³² describes how [power](#)⁹¹ is calculated in a series circuit.

Related topics:

[Kirchoff's voltage law](#)⁸⁹

[Series circuit exercise](#)²¹²

[Series circuit examples](#)²¹³

[Series circuit demonstration circuit](#)²¹⁵

[Series circuit knowledge test](#)²¹⁹

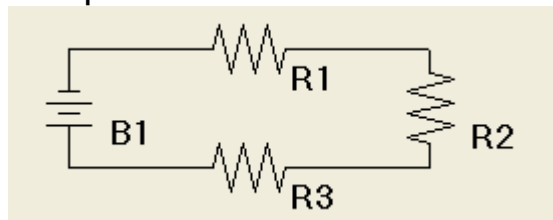
[Power and energy exercise](#)²³⁰

Resistors and Simple Circuits Tutorial

Series Circuit Exercise

Examples

Example 1



Circuit values


```

B1 = 120 volts
R1 = 10 ohms
R2 = 20 ohms
R3 = 30 ohms

```

The total resistance⁹² in a series circuit⁹³ is the sum of the individual resistances. In the above circuit

$$\begin{aligned}
 R \text{ (total)} &= R1 + R2 + R3 \\
 &= 10 + 20 + 30 \\
 &= 60 \text{ ohms}
 \end{aligned}$$

Using Ohm's law⁹⁰ the total current⁸⁴ in a series circuit is equal to the total applied voltage⁹⁵ divided by the total resistance. In the above circuit

$$\begin{aligned}
 I \text{ (total)} &= E \text{ (total)} / R \text{ (total)} \\
 &= 120 / 60 \\
 &= 2 \text{ amps}
 \end{aligned}$$

Using the fact the same circuit current flows through each device, Ohm's law can be used to determine the voltage drop across each resistor.

$$\begin{aligned}
 E \text{ (R1)} &= I \text{ (total)} \times R1 \\
 &= 2 \times 10 \\
 &= 20 \text{ volts}
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 E \text{ (R2)} &= I \text{ (total)} \times R2 \\
 &= 2 \times 20 \\
 &= 40 \text{ volts}
 \end{aligned}$$

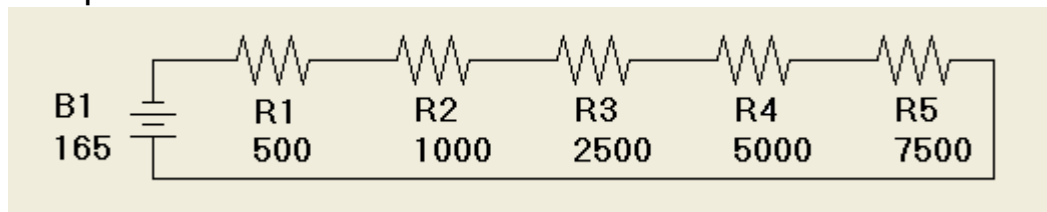
$$\begin{aligned}
 E \text{ (R3)} &= I \text{ (total)} \times R3 \\
 &= 2 \times 30 \\
 &= 60 \text{ volts}
 \end{aligned}$$

Kirchoff's voltage law⁸⁹ states the sum of voltage drops around a series circuit is equal to the applied voltage.

$$\begin{aligned}
 E \text{ (drops)} &= E \text{ (R1)} + E \text{ (R2)} + E \text{ (R3)} \\
 &= 20 + 40 + 60 \\
 &= 120 \text{ volts}
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 E \text{ (applied)} &= B1 \\
 &= 120 \text{ volts}
 \end{aligned}$$

Example 2



Given a series circuit⁹³ with five resistors as shown and an applied voltage⁹⁵ of 165 volts, determine the circuit current.⁸⁴

The total resistance⁹² in a series circuit is the sum of the individual resistances. In the above circuit

$$\begin{aligned}
 R \text{ (total)} &= R1 + R2 + R3 + R4 + R5 \\
 &= 500 + 1000 + 2500 + 5000 + 7500 \\
 &= 16500 \text{ ohms}
 \end{aligned}$$

Using [Ohm's law](#),⁹⁰ the total current in a series circuit is equal to the total applied voltage divided by the total resistance.

$$\begin{aligned} I \text{ (total)} &= E \text{ (total)} / R \text{ (total)} \\ &= 165 / 16500 \\ &= 0.01 \text{ amps} \\ &= 10 \text{ mA} \end{aligned}$$

Related topics:

[Series circuit theory](#)²¹²

[Series circuit exercise](#)²¹²

[Series circuit knowledge test](#)²¹⁹

[Series circuit](#)⁹³

Resistors and Simple Circuits Tutorial

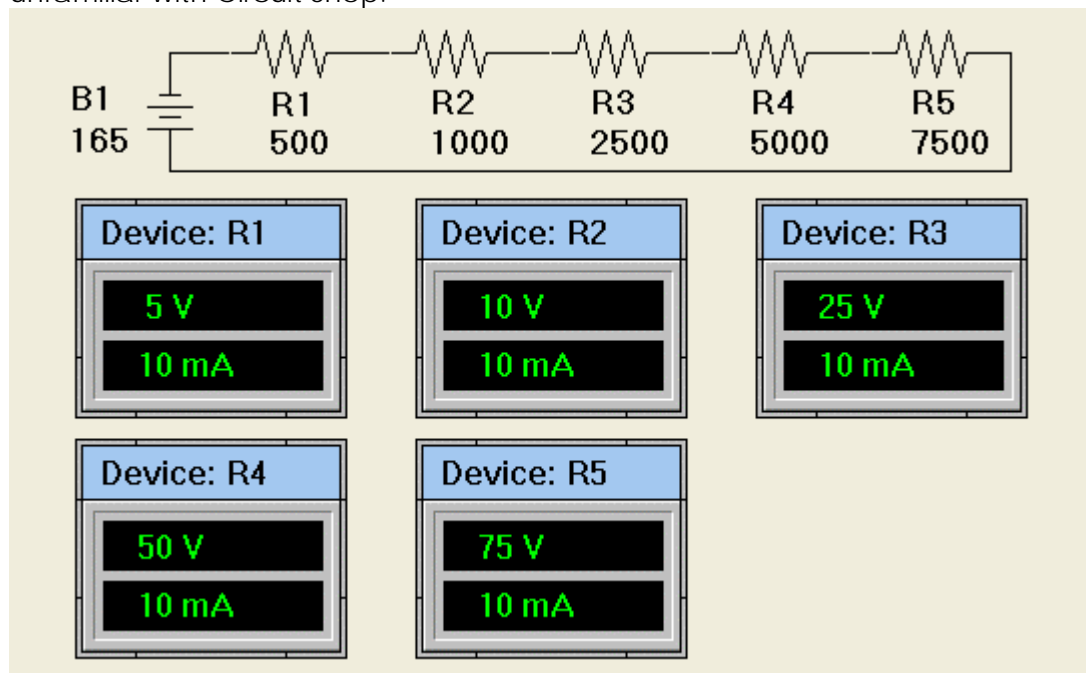
Series Circuit Exercise

Demonstration Circuit

This circuit demonstrates the relationship between [voltage](#),⁹⁵ [current](#)⁸⁴ and [resistance](#)⁹² in a [series circuit](#).⁹³

Step 1 - construct the circuit

Use Circuit Shop tools to construct the following circuit. See [detailed instructions](#)²¹⁷ if you are unfamiliar with Circuit Shop.



Step 2 - analyse the circuit



Use the [Tool | Analyse](#)⁴⁶ menu command or the [toolbar](#)³⁷ icon [Analyze](#) to analyse the circuit. [Analysing a circuit](#)¹⁹ provides additional details.

If the circuit has been correctly constructed and the device meters correctly linked to the resistors, after the analyse command has been executed, the device meters should display the following [voltages](#)⁹⁵ and [currents](#).⁸⁴

Voltage (volts)	Current (mA)
--------------------	-----------------

R1	5	10
R2	10	10
R3	25	10
R4	50	10
R5	75	10
===		
165		

As stated in [Kirchoff's voltage law](#),⁸⁹ the sum of the device meter voltages, 165 volts is equal to the applied voltage by battery B1.

The total resistance in a series circuit is the sum of the individual resistances.



$$\begin{aligned}
 R \text{ (total)} &= R1 + R2 + R3 + R4 + R5 \\
 &= 500 + 1000 + 2500 + 5000 + 7500 \\
 &= 16500 \text{ ohms}
 \end{aligned}$$

Using [Ohm's law](#),⁹⁰ the total current in a series circuit is equal to the total applied voltage divided by the total resistance.

$$\begin{aligned}
 I \text{ (total)} &= E \text{ (total)} / R \text{ (total)} \\
 &= 165 / 16500 \\
 &= 0.01 \text{ amps} \\
 &= 10 \text{ mA}
 \end{aligned}$$

As shown in each device meter, this current flows through each resistor. Series circuits have the property that the current is the same through each device.

Step 2 - increase the voltage

- Using the mouse, click the pointer icon  on the [toolbar](#)³⁷ or the [analog device toolkit](#).⁵²
- Move the mouse onto the diagram over the battery.
- Double click the mouse on the battery to open the [Edit Device dialog box](#).⁶⁴ [Modifying device values](#)¹⁶ provides additional details.
- In the value field, enter 200 as the battery's new value. This doubles the applied voltage.
- Use the [Tool|Analyse](#)⁴⁶ menu command or the [toolbar](#)³⁷ icon  Analyse to analyse the circuit.
- After the analyse command has been executed, the device meter should display the following voltages and currents.

	Voltage (volts)	Current (mA)
R1	10	20
R2	20	20
R3	50	20
R4	100	20
R5	150	20
===		
300		

As expected, since the applied voltage was doubled, the resulting circuit current doubled to 20 mA and the voltage across each resistor doubled. Using Ohm's law, the total current in a series circuit is equal to the total applied voltage divided by the total resistance.

$$\begin{aligned}
 I \text{ (total)} &= E \text{ (total)} / R \text{ (total)} \\
 &= 300 / 16500 \\
 &= 0.02 \text{ amps} \\
 &= 20 \text{ mA}
 \end{aligned}$$

Related topics:

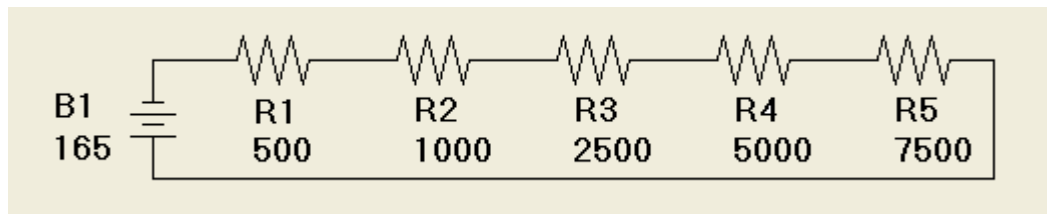
[Resistors and Simple Circuits - Tutorial](#)²⁰⁵
[Series circuit exercise](#)²¹²
[Series circuit theory](#)²¹²
[Series circuit examples](#)²¹³
[Series circuit demonstration circuit construction](#)
[Series circuit knowledge test](#)²¹⁹
[Parallel circuit exercise](#)²²¹
[Ohm's law exercise](#)²⁰⁵
[Ohm's law](#)⁹⁰
[Voltage](#)⁹⁵
[Current](#)⁸⁴
[Resistance](#)⁹²

Resistors and Simple Circuits Tutorial

Series Circuit Exercise

Demonstration Circuit


Circuit Construction




This topic provides detailed instructions to construct the series circuit demonstration circuit shown in the title bar above.

Open a diagram window and display the analog device toolkit:




1. Use the [File | New](#)³⁹ menu command or the [toolbar](#)³⁷ icon  to open a new diagram window. [Creating a new diagram window](#)¹⁵ provides additional details.
2. Ensure the [analog device toolkit](#)⁵² is visible. If the toolkit is not visible, use the [View | Analog](#)



[Device Toolkit](#)⁴⁹ menu command or the toolbar icon  to display it.


Add resistors to the diagram:



1. Using the mouse, click the resistor icon  on the [analog device toolkit](#).⁵²
2. Move the mouse onto the diagram to approximately the center of the diagram window.
3. Click the mouse to place the resistor on the diagram. [Adding devices](#)¹² provides additional details.
4. Repeat step (3) to add five resistors to the diagram as shown in the title bar above.

Add a battery to the diagram:



1. Using the mouse, click the battery icon  on the [analog device toolkit](#).⁵²
2. Move the mouse onto the diagram to where the battery is to be located. See circuit layout in title bar.
3. Click the mouse to place the battery on the diagram.

Layout the circuit and rotate the devices:



1. Using the mouse, click the pointer icon on the [toolbar](#)³⁷ or the [analog device toolkit](#).⁵²
2. If necessary, move the resistors so they are horizontally aligned. See circuit layout in title bar. To move a device, press the left mouse button over a device and drag it to the new location. [Moving devices](#)¹⁷ provides additional details.
3. By default, Circuit Shop places resistors and batteries on a diagram in a horizontal orientation. To rotate the battery, press the left mouse button over one of the battery terminals and drag it to a vertical orientation. [Rotating devices](#)¹⁸ provides additional details.
4. Move the battery so the top battery terminal is aligned with the left-most resistor terminal. See circuit layout in title bar.

Add wires to connect the devices:



1. Using the mouse, click the wire icon on the [toolbar](#)³⁷ or the [analog device toolkit](#).⁵²
2. Move the mouse onto the diagram over the top battery terminal.
3. Press the left mouse button and drag the wire to the left-most resistor terminal. [Connecting devices](#)¹⁴ provides additional details.
4. Repeat steps (2) and (3) to connect each of the resistor terminals to form a "string" of resistors.
5. Repeat steps (2) and (3) to connect the right-most resistor terminal to the bottom battery terminal.
6. To "square" up the circuit, a [vertex](#)⁹⁵ needs to be added to the wire. Using the mouse, click



the pointer icon on the [toolbar](#)³⁷ or the [analog device toolkit](#).⁵² To add a vertex, move the pointer over the wire added in step (5), press the left mouse button and drag the wire to the new location. [Adding a wire vertex](#)¹² provides additional details.

At this point the circuit connections are complete and should look as shown in the title bar above.

Add ids and values to the devices:



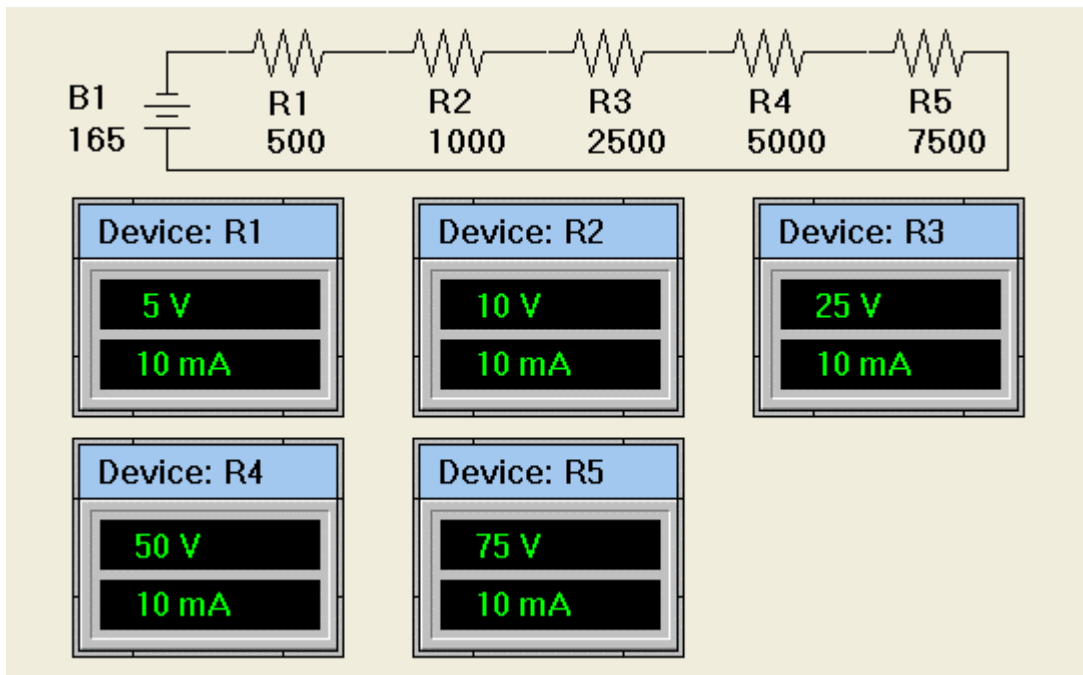
1. Using the mouse, click the pointer icon on the [toolbar](#)³⁷ or the [analog device toolkit](#).⁵²
2. Move the mouse onto the diagram over the left-most resistor.
3. Double click the mouse on the resistor to open the [Edit Device dialog box](#).⁶⁴ [Modifying device values](#)¹⁶ provides additional details.
4. Enter 1 as the resistor id and 500 ohms as its value.
5. Repeat steps (3) and (4) on the other resistors, enter 2, 3, 4 and 5 as the resistor ids and 1000, 2500, 5000, 7500 ohms as their values.
6. Repeat step (3) on the battery and enter 1 as the battery id and 165 volts as its value.
7. Because of the vertical device orientation of the battery, the displayed id and value, called annotations, need to be moved. See the circuit layout in title bar above for suggested annotation locations. To move an annotation, using the pointer, press the left mouse button over the annotation and drag it to the new location. [Moving objects](#)¹⁷ provides additional details.

At this point the circuit is complete. The devices have been added, wires have been added to connect the devices, and their ids and values have been defined.

Add device meters to the diagram:



1. Using the mouse, click the [device meter](#)²⁹ icon on the [analog device toolkit](#).⁵²
2. Five device meters need to be added to the diagram as shown below.



To add the first meter, move the mouse onto the diagram to a position just under the battery as shown in the title bar above.

- Click the mouse to place the meter on the diagram. [Adding objects](#)¹² provides additional details.
- Repeat step (3) to add the other four meters as shown above.

Link the meters to the resistors:



- Using the mouse, click the pointer icon on the [toolbar](#)³⁷ or the [analog device toolkit](#).⁵²
- Move the mouse onto the diagram over the first [device meter](#).²⁹
- Double click the mouse on the meter to open the [Edit Meter dialog box](#).⁶⁸ [Modifying object values](#)¹⁶ provides additional details.
- To link the meter to the resistor, select [Resistor](#) as the device type and [1](#) as the id.
- Repeat steps (2), (3) and (4) on the other meters, select [Resistor](#) as the device type and enter [2](#), [3](#), [4](#) and [5](#) as the device ids.

At this point the circuit construction is complete. Return to [series circuit demonstration](#)²¹⁵ to complete the exercise.

Related topics:

[Creating and editing diagrams](#)¹¹
[Menu commands](#)³⁷
[Toolbar commands](#)³⁷
[Device and drawing toolkits](#)⁵¹
[Dialog boxes](#)⁶²

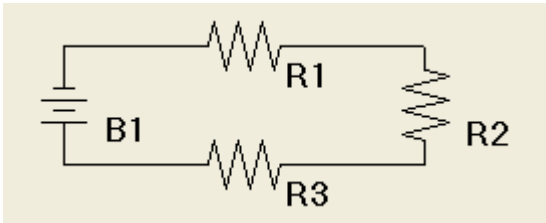
Resistors and Simple Circuits Tutorial

Series Circuit Exercise

Knowledge test

- The total resistance in a series circuit is the _____ of the individual resistances.
- In a series circuit, the _____ current flows through each device.
- Given a series circuit with 3 resistors with values [100](#), [150](#), and [500](#) ohms, what is the total resistance? [\(answer\)\(9\)](#)²⁹¹

4. Given a series circuit with 3 resistors with values 500, 750, and 1000 ohms, what is the total resistance?



5. In the above series circuit, what is the circuit current, with device values:

B1 = 12 volts
R1 = 250 ohms
R2 = 500 ohms
R3 = 750 ohms

(answer)(10)²⁹²

6. In the above series circuit, what is the circuit current, with device values:

B1 = 120 volts
R1 = 50 ohms
R2 = 450 ohms
R3 = 1000 ohms

Related topics:

[Series circuit theory](#)²¹²

[Series circuit examples](#)²¹³

[Series circuit exercise](#)²¹²

[Resistors and Simple Circuits - Tutorial](#)²⁰⁵

Resistors and Simple Circuits Tutorial

Parallel Circuit Exercise



Theory

The relationship between voltage, current and resistance in a [parallel circuit](#)⁹¹ can be found in [theory](#).²²¹

Examples

The use of Ohm's law to determine a parallel circuit's current, voltage or resistance can be found in [examples](#).²²³

Demonstration

[Parallel circuit demonstration](#)²²⁵ provides instructions to construct a simple Circuit Shop circuit to show the relationships between voltage, current and resistance in a parallel circuit.

Knowledge test

Review questions can be found in [knowledge test](#).²²⁸

Related topics:

[Parallel circuit theory](#)²²¹

[Parallel circuit examples](#)²²³

[Parallel circuit demonstration circuit](#)²²⁵

[Parallel circuit demonstration circuit construction](#)²²⁶

[Parallel circuit knowledge test](#)²²⁸

[Series circuit exercise](#)²¹²

[Ohm's law exercise](#)²⁰⁵

[Parallel circuit](#)⁹¹

[Series circuit](#)⁹³

[Ohm's law](#)⁹⁰

[Voltage](#)⁹⁵

[Current](#)⁸⁴

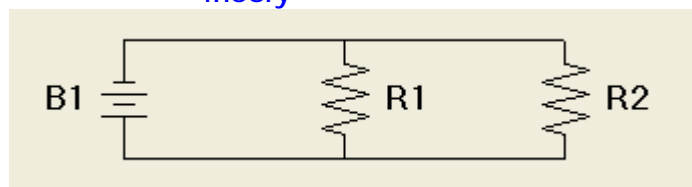
[Resistance](#)⁹²

[Tutorial topic tree](#)²⁰³

Resistors and Simple Circuits Tutorial

Parallel Circuit Exercise

Theory



A [parallel circuit](#)⁹¹ is composed of circuit components connected side-by-side such that the circuit [current](#)⁸⁴ has multiple paths.

Parallel circuit current

In the above circuit, R1 and R2 are connected in "parallel" to battery B1, i.e. battery B1 applies its [voltage](#)⁹⁵ equally across resistors R1 and R2.

Using [Ohm's law](#),⁹⁰ the current in each branch of the parallel circuit is equal to the voltage applied across the branch divided by the branch resistance. In the above circuit, the current through R1's branch is the voltage applied by B1 divided by the resistance of the branch. The current through R2's branch may be found in a similar manner.

$$\begin{aligned} I (R1) &= E (B1) / R1 \\ I (R2) &= E (B1) / R2 \end{aligned}$$

[Kirchoff's current law](#)⁸⁹ states the total current in a parallel circuit is equal to the sum of the branch currents. In the above circuit, the total current is the sum of the currents through each branch.

$$I (total) = I (R1) + I (R2)$$

In general, the total current in a parallel circuit with branch currents I1, I2, I3, ... is

$$I (total) = I1 + I2 + I3 + \dots$$

Parallel circuit resistance

The general formula for finding the total resistance of resistances in parallel (sometimes called the reciprocal of reciprocals) is

$$R (total) = \frac{1}{\frac{1}{R1} + \frac{1}{R2} + \frac{1}{R3} + \dots}$$

Note: The total resistance of resistors in parallel is always less than the lowest branch resistance value. This is because the total current for a parallel circuit is always greater than the current through any individual branch.

For two resistors in parallel, the formula can be arranged as

$$R (total) = \frac{R1 \times R2}{R1 + R2}$$

For N parallel resistors of equal value R, another special case formula can be used

$$R (total) = \frac{R}{N}$$

A second approach to determining the total resistance of a parallel circuit:

1. Use Ohm's law to determine the current through each branch.
2. Sum the branch currents to determine the total circuit current.
3. Use Ohm's law again to determine the total resistance based on the applied voltage divided by the total circuit current.

For example, a circuit with a voltage source E1 and three parallel resistors, R1, R2 and R3.

1.
$$\begin{aligned} I1 &= E1 / R1 \\ I2 &= E1 / R2 \\ I3 &= E1 / R3 \end{aligned}$$
2.
$$I (total) = I1 + I2 + I3$$
3.
$$R (total) = E1 / I (total)$$

[Parallel circuit examples](#)²²³ works through an example of the use of the above equations.

Power

[Parallel circuit power](#)²³³ describes how [power](#)⁹¹ is calculated in a parallel circuit.

Related topics:

[Kirchoff's current law](#)⁸⁹

[Parallel circuit exercise](#)²²¹

[Parallel circuit examples](#)²²³

[Parallel circuit demonstration circuit](#)²²⁵

[Power and energy exercise](#)²³⁰

Resistors and Simple Circuits Tutorial

Parallel Circuit Exercise

Examples

Example 1



Circuit values

B1 = 120 volts

R1 = 100 ohms

R2 = 500 ohms

R3 = 2000 ohms

As described in [parallel circuit theory](#)²²¹ the total [resistance](#)⁹² in a [parallel circuit](#)⁹¹ may be found using the following general formula.

$$R \text{ (total)} = \frac{1}{\frac{1}{R1} + \frac{1}{R2} + \frac{1}{R3} + \dots}$$

Using the circuit values

$$\begin{aligned} R \text{ (total)} &= 1 / (1/R1 + 1/R2 + 1/R3) \\ &= 1 / (1/100 + 1/500 + 1/2000) \\ &= 1 / (0.01 + 0.002 + 0.0005) \\ &= 1 / 0.0125 \\ &= 80 \text{ ohms} \end{aligned}$$

Using [Ohm's law](#)⁹⁰ the total [current](#)⁸⁴ in a parallel circuit is equal to the total applied [voltage](#)⁹⁵ divided by the total resistance. In the above circuit

$$\begin{aligned} I \text{ (total)} &= E \text{ (total)} / R \text{ (total)} \\ &= 120 / 80 \\ &= 1.5 \text{ amps} \end{aligned}$$

The total resistance and total current of a parallel circuit may be verified as follows:

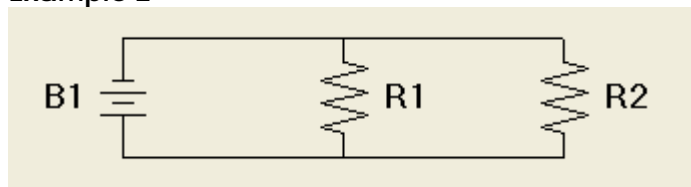
1. Use Ohm's law to determine the current through each branch.
2. Sum the branch currents to determine the total circuit current.

- Use Ohm's law again to determine the total resistance based on the applied voltage divided by the total circuit current.

In the above circuit

$$\begin{aligned}
 1. \quad I_1 &= E_1 / R_1 = 120 / 100 = 1.2 \text{ amps} \\
 I_2 &= E_1 / R_2 = 120 / 500 = 0.24 \text{ amps} \\
 I_3 &= E_1 / R_3 = 120 / 2000 = 0.06 \text{ amps} \\
 \\
 2. \quad I \text{ (total)} &= I_1 + I_2 + I_3 \\
 &= 1.2 + 0.24 + 0.06 \\
 &= 1.5 \text{ amps} \\
 \\
 3. \quad R \text{ (total)} &= E_1 / I \text{ (total)} \\
 &= 120 / 1.5 \\
 &= 80 \text{ ohms}
 \end{aligned}$$

Example 2



Circuit values

$$\begin{aligned}
 B1 &= 120 \text{ volts} \\
 R1 &= 100 \text{ ohms} \\
 R2 &= 400 \text{ ohms}
 \end{aligned}$$

As described in [parallel circuit theory](#)²²¹ the total [resistance](#)⁹² in a [parallel circuit](#)⁹¹ containing two resistors may be found using the following special case formula.

$$R \text{ (total)} = \frac{R_1 \times R_2}{R_1 + R_2}$$

In the above circuit

$$\begin{aligned}
 R \text{ (total)} &= (100 \times 400) / (100 + 400) \\
 &= 40000 / 500 \\
 &= 80 \text{ ohms}
 \end{aligned}$$

Example 3



Circuit values

$$\begin{aligned}
 B1 &= 120 \text{ volts} \\
 R1 &= 150 \text{ ohms} \\
 R2 &= 150 \text{ ohms} \\
 R3 &= 150 \text{ ohms}
 \end{aligned}$$

As described in [parallel circuit theory](#)²²¹ the total [resistance](#)⁹² in a [parallel circuit](#)⁹¹ containing resistors of equal value may be found using the following special case formula.

$$R$$

$$R \text{ (total)} = \frac{---}{N}$$

In the above circuit

$$R \text{ (total)} = 150 / 3 \\ = 50 \text{ ohms}$$

Related topics:

[Parallel circuit theory](#)²²¹

[Parallel circuit exercise](#)²²¹

[Parallel circuit](#)⁹¹

Resistors and Simple Circuits Tutorial

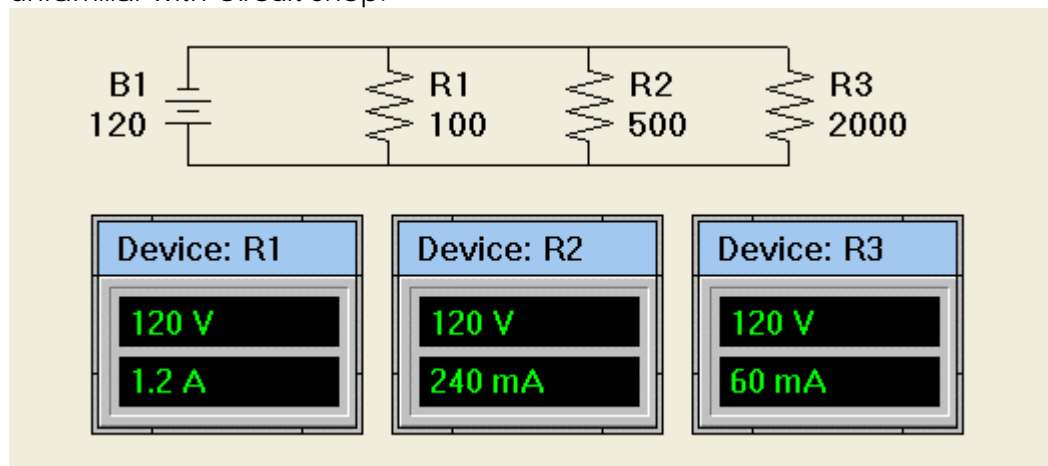
Parallel Circuit Exercise

Demonstration Circuit

This circuit demonstrates the relationship between [voltage](#)⁹⁵, [current](#)⁸⁴ and [resistance](#)⁹² in a [parallel circuit](#)⁹¹.

Step 1 - construct the circuit

Use Circuit Shop tools to construct the following circuit. See [detailed instructions](#)²²⁶ if you are unfamiliar with Circuit Shop.



Step 2 - analyse the circuit



Use the [Tool | Analyse](#)⁴⁶ menu command or the [toolbar](#)³⁷ icon [Analyze](#) to analyse the circuit. [Analysing a circuit](#)¹⁹ provides additional details.

If the circuit has been correctly constructed and the device meters correctly linked to the resistors, after the analyse command has been executed, the device meters should display the following [voltages](#)⁹⁵ and [currents](#)⁸⁴.

	Voltage (volts)	Current (mA)
R1	120	1200
R2	120	240
R3	120	60
	====	
	1500	= 1.5 amps

As stated in [Kirchoff's current law](#)⁸⁹, the sum of the branch currents as shown by the device meter currents, 1.5 amps, is the total current in the parallel circuit.

Using [Ohm's law](#),⁹⁰ the total resistance in a parallel circuit is equal to the total applied voltage divided by the total current. For the above circuit

$$\begin{aligned} R \text{ (total)} &= E \text{ (total)} / I \text{ (total)} \\ &= 120 / 1.5 \\ &= 80 \text{ ohms} \end{aligned}$$

As described in [parallel circuit theory](#),²²¹ the total [resistance](#)⁹² in a [parallel circuit](#)⁹¹ is always less than any individual branch resistance. In the above circuit, the total resistance is 80 ohms which is less than the lowest branch resistance, 100 ohms.

Related topics:

[Resistors and Simple Circuits - Tutorial](#)²⁰⁵

[Parallel circuit exercise](#)²²¹

[Parallel circuit theory](#)²²¹

[Parallel circuit examples](#)²²³

[Parallel circuit demonstration circuit construction](#)

[Series circuit exercise](#)²¹²

[Ohm's law exercise](#)²⁰⁵

[Ohm's law](#)⁹⁰

[Voltage](#)⁹⁵

[Current](#)⁸⁴

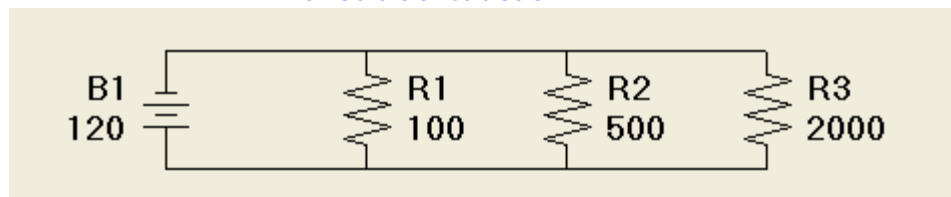
[Resistance](#)⁹²

Resistors and Simple Circuits Tutorial

Parallel Circuit Exercise

Demonstration Circuit

Circuit Construction



This topic provides detailed instructions to construct the parallel circuit demonstration circuit shown in the title bar above.

Open a diagram window and display the analog device toolkit:



1. Use the [File|New](#)³⁹ menu command or the [toolbar](#)³⁷ icon [File New](#) to open a new diagram window. [Creating a new diagram window](#)¹⁵ provides additional details.
2. Ensure the [analog device toolkit](#)⁵² is visible. [\(hint1\)](#)⁷⁶

Add resistors to the diagram:



1. Using the mouse, click the resistor icon [analog device toolkit](#)⁵².
2. Move the mouse onto the diagram to approximately the center of the diagram window.
3. Click the mouse to place the resistor on the diagram. [Adding devices](#)¹² provides additional details.
4. Repeat step (3) to add two more resistors to the diagram as shown in the title bar above.

Add a battery to the diagram:



1. Using the mouse, click the battery icon on the [analog device toolkit](#).⁵²
2. Move the mouse onto the diagram to where the battery is to be located. See circuit layout in the title bar above.
3. Click the mouse to place the battery on the diagram.

Use the pointer tool to layout the circuit and rotate the devices:



1. Using the mouse, click the pointer icon on the [toolbar](#)³⁷ or the [analog device toolkit](#).⁵²
2. As necessary, move the battery and resistors so they are side-by-side, horizontally aligned. See circuit layout in the title bar above. To move a device, press the left mouse button over a device and drag it to the new location. [Moving devices](#)¹⁷ provides additional details.
3. By default, Circuit Shop places resistors and batteries on a diagram in a horizontal orientation. To rotate the battery and each resistor, press the left mouse button over one of the device's terminals and drag it to a vertical orientation. [Rotating devices](#)¹⁸ provides additional details.

Add wires to connect the devices:



1. Using the mouse, click the wire icon on the [toolbar](#)³⁷ or the [analog device toolkit](#).⁵²
2. Move the mouse onto the diagram over the top battery terminal.
3. Press the left mouse button and drag the wire to the left-most resistor top terminal. [Connecting devices](#)¹⁴ provides additional details.
4. Repeat steps (2) and (3) to connect each top resistor terminal, the bottom battery terminal to the left-most resistor bottom terminal, and each bottom resistor terminal.

At this point the circuit connections are complete and should look as shown in the title bar above.

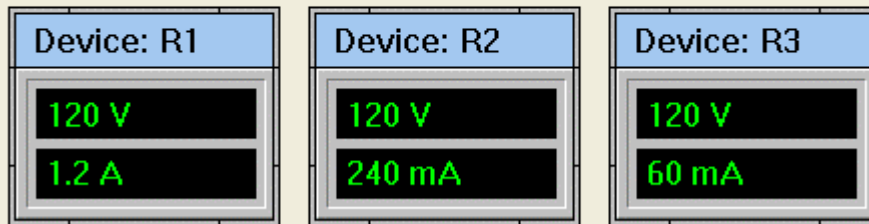
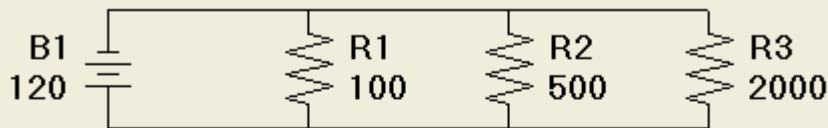
Add ids and values to the devices:




1. Using the mouse, click the pointer icon on the [toolbar](#)³⁷ or the [analog device toolkit](#).⁵²
2. Move the mouse onto the diagram over the left-most resistor.
3. Double click the mouse on the resistor to open the [Edit Device dialog box](#).⁶⁴ [Modifying device values](#)¹⁶ provides additional details.
4. Enter 1 as the resistor id and 100 ohms as its value.
5. Repeat steps (3) and (4) on the other resistors, enter 2 and 3 as the resistor ids and 500, 2000 ohms as their values.
6. Repeat step (3) on the battery and enter 1 as the battery id and 120 volts as its value.
6. Because of the vertical device orientation of the devices, the displayed ids and values, called annotations, need to be moved. See the circuit layout in title bar above for suggested annotation locations. To move an annotation, using the pointer, press the left mouse button over the annotation and drag it to the new location. [Moving objects](#)¹⁷ provides additional details.

At this point the circuit is complete. The devices have been added, wires have been added to connect the devices, and their ids and values have been defined.


Add device meters to the diagram:



1. Using the mouse, click the [device meter](#)²⁹ icon  on the [analog device toolkit](#).⁵²
2. Three device meters need to be added to the diagram. To add the first meter, move the mouse onto the diagram to a position just under the battery as shown above.
3. Click the mouse to place the meter on the diagram. [Adding objects](#)¹² provides additional details.
4. Repeat step (3) to add the other two meters as shown above.

Link the meters to the resistors:



1. Using the mouse, click the pointer icon  on the [toolbar](#)³⁷ or the [analog device toolkit](#).⁵²
2. Move the mouse onto the diagram over the first [device meter](#).²⁹
3. Double click the mouse on the meter to open the [Edit Meter dialog box](#).⁶⁸ [Modifying object values](#)¹⁶ provides additional details.
4. To link the meter to the resistor, select [Resistor](#) as the device type and 1 as the id.
5. Repeat steps (2), (3) and (4) on the other meters, select [Resistor](#) as the device type and enter 2 and 3 as the device ids.

At this point the circuit construction is complete. Return to [parallel circuit demonstration](#)²²⁵ to complete the exercise.

Related topics:

[Creating and editing diagrams](#)¹¹

[Menu commands](#)³⁷

[Toolbar commands](#)³⁷

[Device and drawing toolkits](#)⁵¹

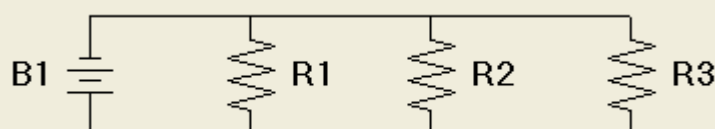
[Dialog boxes](#)⁶²

Resistors and Simple Circuits Tutorial

Parallel Circuit Exercise

Knowledge test

1. The total current in a parallel circuit is the _____ of the individual currents.
2. In a parallel circuit composed of resistors with different values, a _____ amount of current flows through each resistor.



3. Given a parallel circuit with 3 resistors with values 100, 250, and 500 ohms, what is the total resistance? [\(answer\)\(11\)](#)²⁹²
4. Given a parallel circuit with 3 resistors with values 500, 750, and 1000 ohms, what is the total resistance?
5. In the above parallel circuit, what is the circuit current, with device values:
B1 = 15 volts
R1 = 250 ohms
R2 = 500 ohms
R3 = 1500 ohms
[\(answer\)\(12\)](#)²⁹²
6. In the above parallel circuit, what is the circuit current, with device values:
B1 = 120 volts
R1 = 50 ohms
R2 = 450 ohms
R3 = 1000 ohms

Related topics:

[Parallel circuit theory](#)²²¹

[Parallel circuit examples](#)²²³

[Parallel circuit exercise](#)²²¹

[Resistors and Simple Circuits - Tutorial](#)²⁰⁵

Resistors and Simple Circuits Tutorial

Power and Energy Exercise

Power

Theory

The equation for [power](#)⁹¹ in an electrical circuit and the relationship between voltage, current and resistance can be found in [theory](#).²³⁰

Examples

The use of the equation for power to determine a circuit's power consumption can be found in [examples](#).²³¹

Energy

Theory

The equation for [energy](#)⁸⁶ in an electric circuit and the relationship to power can be found in [theory](#).²³⁴

Examples

The use of the equation for energy to determine a circuit's energy consumption can be found in [examples](#).²³⁵

Knowledge test

Review questions can be found in [knowledge test](#).²³⁵

Related topics:

[Ohm's law](#)⁹⁰

[Voltage](#)⁹⁵

[Current](#)⁸⁴

[Resistance](#)⁹²

[Tutorial topic tree](#)²⁰³

Resistors and Simple Circuits Tutorial

Power and Energy Exercise

Power - Theory

Power is the rate of doing work. Electrical power in a [resistance](#)⁹² is turned into heat. The greater the power, the faster heat is generated.

- The power in a circuit is directly proportional to the product of the applied electromotive force and the resulting circuit current. In other words, the greater the voltage and current, the greater the power.
- The power in watts in a circuit is equal to the [voltage](#)⁹⁵ in volts times the circuit [current](#)⁸⁴ in amperes.

Power is measured in [watts](#)⁹⁵ named after James Watt, the Scottish mechanical engineer who invented the steam engine.

In equation form

$$P \text{ (watts)} = E \text{ (volts)} \times I \text{ (amperes)}$$

where

P = the circuit power in watts

E = the applied voltage in volts
I = the circuit current in amperes

By substituting the [Ohm's law](#)⁹⁰ equivalent for **E**, **I** and **R**, (see [Ohm's law theory](#))²⁰⁶ the above equation can be arranged as

$$P = \frac{E^2}{R} \quad P = I^2 \times R$$

Using the various forms of the above equations, if any two variables is known, the third variable can be determined. See power [examples](#).²³¹

When using any of the above equations, all variable values must be in the same basic units, for example **E** in volts, **I** in amperes and **R** in ohms. See [unit conversion](#).⁷⁵

[Power](#)⁹¹ calculation in a [series](#)⁹³ and [parallel circuits](#)⁹¹ is described in [series circuit power](#)²³² and [parallel circuit power](#)²³³ respectively.

Related topics:

[Power examples](#)²³¹
[Power and energy exercise](#)²³⁰
[Voltage](#)⁹⁵
[Current](#)⁶⁴
[Resistance](#)⁹²

Resistors and Simple Circuits Tutorial

Power and Energy Exercise

Power - Examples

Example 1

Given a voltage of 10 volts and a current of 5 amperes, what is the power in the circuit?

$$\begin{aligned} P &= E \times I \\ &= 10 \times 5 \\ &= 50 \text{ watts} \end{aligned}$$

Example 2

Given a voltage of 20 volts and a resistance of 50 ohms, what is the power in the circuit?

$$P = \frac{E^2}{R} = \frac{20^2}{50} = \frac{400}{50} = 20 \text{ watts}$$

Example 3

Given a current of 10 amperes and a resistance of 20 ohms, what is the power in the circuit?

$$\begin{aligned} P &= I^2 \times R \\ &= 10^2 \times 20 \\ &= 100 \times 20 \\ &= 2000 \text{ watts} \end{aligned}$$

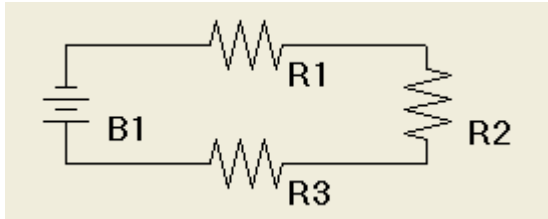
Related topics:

[Power theory](#)²³⁰
[Power and energy exercise](#)²³⁰
[Series circuit power](#)²³²
[Parallel circuit power](#)²³³

Resistors and Simple Circuits Tutorial

Power and Energy Exercise

Series Circuit Power



Power can be calculated as the product of the total [voltage](#)⁹⁵ times the total [current](#)⁸⁴. In the above circuit, using the following circuit values

```
B1 = 120 volts
R1 = 10 ohms
R2 = 20 ohms
R3 = 30 ohms
```

The total [resistance](#)⁹² in a [series circuit](#)⁹³ is the sum of the individual resistances. In the above circuit

$$\begin{aligned} R \text{ (total)} &= R1 + R2 + R3 \\ &= 10 + 20 + 30 \\ &= 60 \text{ ohms} \end{aligned}$$

Using [Ohm's law](#),⁹⁰ the total [current](#)⁸⁴ in a series circuit is equal to the total applied [voltage](#)⁹⁵ divided by the total [resistance](#)⁹². In the above circuit

$$\begin{aligned} I \text{ (total)} &= E \text{ (total)} / R \text{ (total)} \\ &= 120 / 60 \\ &= 2 \text{ amps} \end{aligned}$$

When the total voltage and current is known, the power may be determined as

$$\begin{aligned} P \text{ (total)} &= E \text{ (total)} \times I \text{ (total)} \\ &= 120 \text{ (volts)} \times 2 \text{ (amps)} \\ &= 240 \text{ watts} \end{aligned}$$

Alternatively, power can be calculated as the sum of the power requirements for each device. In the above circuit, using the same circuit values, power may be calculated using the $P = I^2 \times R$ formula developed in the [power theory topic](#).²³⁰ Note, this formula can be used because the same current flows through each device.

$$\begin{aligned} P \text{ (R1)} &= I \text{ (total)}^2 \times R1 \\ &= 2^2 \times 10 \\ &= 4 \times 10 \\ &= 40 \text{ watts} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} P \text{ (R2)} &= I \text{ (total)}^2 \times R2 \\ &= 2^2 \times 20 \\ &= 80 \text{ watts} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} P \text{ (R3)} &= I \text{ (total)}^2 \times R3 \\ &= 2^2 \times 30 \\ &= 120 \text{ watts} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 P \text{ (total)} &= P \text{ (R1)} + P \text{ (R2)} + P \text{ (R3)} \\
 &= 40 + 80 + 120 \\
 &= 240 \text{ watts}
 \end{aligned}$$

Related topics:

[Power theory](#)²³⁰

[Power and energy exercise](#)²³⁰

[Series circuit exercise](#)²¹²

[Parallel circuit power](#)²³³

Resistors and Simple Circuits Tutorial

Power and Energy Exercise

Parallel Circuit Power



Power can be calculated as the product of the total [voltage](#)⁹⁵ times the total [current](#).⁸⁴ In the above circuit, using the following circuit values

$$\begin{aligned}
 B1 &= 120 \text{ volts} \\
 R1 &= 100 \text{ ohms} \\
 R2 &= 500 \text{ ohms} \\
 R3 &= 2000 \text{ ohms}
 \end{aligned}$$

As described in [parallel circuit theory](#),²²¹ the total [resistance](#)⁹² in a [parallel circuit](#)⁹¹ may be found using the following general formula.

$$R \text{ (total)} = \frac{1}{\frac{1}{R1} + \frac{1}{R2} + \frac{1}{R3} + \dots}$$

Using the circuit values

$$\begin{aligned}
 R \text{ (total)} &= 1 / (1/R1 + 1/R2 + 1/R3) \\
 &= 1 / (1/100 + 1/500 + 1/2000) \\
 &= 1 / (0.01 + 0.002 + 0.0005) \\
 &= 1 / 0.0125 \\
 &= 80 \text{ ohms}
 \end{aligned}$$

Using [Ohm's law](#),⁹⁰ the total [current](#)⁸⁴ in a parallel circuit is equal to the total applied [voltage](#)⁹⁵ divided by the total [resistance](#).⁹² In the above circuit

$$\begin{aligned}
 I \text{ (total)} &= E \text{ (total)} / R \text{ (total)} \\
 &= 120 / 80 \\
 &= 1.5 \text{ amps}
 \end{aligned}$$

When the total voltage and current is known, the power may be determined as

$$\begin{aligned}
 P \text{ (total)} &= E \text{ (total)} \times I \text{ (total)} \\
 &= 120 \text{ (volts)} \times 1.5 \text{ (amps)} \\
 &= 180 \text{ watts}
 \end{aligned}$$

Alternatively, power can be calculated as the sum of the power requirements for each device. In the above circuit, using the same circuit values, power may be calculated using the $P = E^2 / R$ formula developed in the [power theory topic](#).²³⁰ Note, this formula can be used because the same voltage is applied to each device.

$$\begin{aligned}
 P(R1) &= E(\text{total})^2 / R1 \\
 &= 120^2 / 100 \\
 &= 14400 / 100 \\
 &= 144 \text{ watts} \\
 \\
 P(R2) &= I(\text{total})^2 / R2 \\
 &= 120^2 / 500 \\
 &= 28.8 \text{ watts} \\
 \\
 P(R3) &= I(\text{total})^2 / R3 \\
 &= 120^2 / 2000 \\
 &= 7.2 \text{ watts} \\
 \\
 P(\text{total}) &= P(R1) + P(R2) + P(R3) \\
 &= 144 + 28.8 + 7.2 \\
 &= 180 \text{ watts}
 \end{aligned}$$

Related topics:

[Power theory](#)²³⁰
[Power and energy exercise](#)²³⁰
[Parallel circuit exercise](#)²²¹
[Series circuit power](#)²³²

Resistors and Simple Circuits Tutorial

Power and Energy Exercise

Energy - Theory

Whereas [power](#)⁹¹ is the rate at which work is done, [energy](#)⁸⁶ is the amount of work actually performed in a period of time. In other words, a small amount of power for a long period of time can use the same amount of energy as a large amount of power for a short period of time.

- The energy used in a circuit is directly proportional to the product of the power and the time duration. In other words, the greater the power and time, the greater the energy.
- The energy in watt-hours used in a circuit is equal to the power in watts multiplied by the time duration in hours.

Energy is measured in [watt-hours](#).⁹⁵ one watt-hour is equivalent to one watt of power used for one hour. The usual household measure of energy is kilowatt-hours which is 1000 watt-hours (1 watt for 1000 hours or 1000 watts for 1 hour).

In equation form

$$W(\text{watt-hours}) = P(\text{watts}) \times t(\text{hours})$$

where

W = the circuit energy in watt-hours
P = the circuit power in watts
t = the time duration in hours

Related topics:

[Power examples](#)²³¹
[Power and energy exercise](#)²³⁰
[Power](#)⁹¹

Resistors and Simple Circuits Tutorial

Power and Energy Exercise

Energy - Examples

Example 1

Given a power of 10 watts and a time duration of 3 hours, what is the energy used in the circuit?

$$\begin{aligned} W &= P \times t \\ &= 10 \times 3 \\ &= 30 \text{ watt-hours} \end{aligned}$$

Example 2

Given a power of 2000 watts and a time duration of 2 hours, what is the energy used in the circuit?

$$\begin{aligned} W &= P \times t \\ &= 2000 \times 2 \\ &= 4000 \text{ watt-hours} \\ &= 4 \text{ kilowatt-hours} \end{aligned}$$

Example 3

Given a voltage of 12 volts and a current of 0.5 amperes and a time duration of 24 hours, what is the energy used in the circuit?

First calculate the circuit power

$$\begin{aligned} P &= E \times I \\ &= 12 \times 0.5 \\ &= 6 \text{ watts} \end{aligned}$$

Using the circuit power, calculate the energy used

$$\begin{aligned} W &= P \times t \\ &= 6 \times 24 \\ &= 144 \text{ watt-hours} \end{aligned}$$

Related topics:

[Energy theory](#)²³⁴

[Power theory](#)²³⁰

[Power examples](#)²³¹

[Power and energy exercise](#)²³⁰

[Energy](#)⁸⁶

[Power](#)⁹¹

Resistors and Simple Circuits Tutorial

Power and Energy Exercise

Knowledge Test

- Given a voltage of 120 volts and a current of 2 amperes, what is the power in the circuit?
(answer)(29)²⁹⁵
- Given a voltage of 6 volts and a current of 0.005 amperes, what is the power in the circuit?
- Given a voltage of 150 volts and a resistance of 1500 ohms, what is the power in the circuit?
(answer)(30)²⁹⁵
- Given a voltage of 1.5 volts and a resistance of 2 kilo ohms, what is the power in the circuit?
- Given a current of 2 mA and a resistance of 2 M ohms, what is the power in the circuit?
(answer)(31)²⁹⁵

6. Given a current of 55 mA and a resistance of 1.5 k ohms, what is the power in the circuit?
7. Given a power of 100 watts and a time duration of 12 hours, what is the energy used in the circuit? (answer)(32)²⁹⁵
8. Given a power of 2 watts and a time duration of 36 hours, what is the energy used in the circuit?
9. Given a voltage of 110 volts and a current of 2.5 amperes and a time duration of 48 hours, what is the energy used in the circuit? (answer)(33)²⁹⁶
10. Given a voltage of 35 volts and a current of 0.5 amperes and a time duration of 5 hours, what is the energy used in the circuit?

Related topics:

[Power - theory](#)²³⁰

[Series circuit power](#)²³²

[Parallel circuit power](#)²³³

[Power - examples](#)²³¹

[Energy - theory](#)²³⁴

[Energy - examples](#)²³⁵

[Power and energy exercise](#)²³⁰

Capacitors, Inductors and Transformers Tutorial

This tutorial covers the following topics:

- [Capacitors](#)⁸² and the theory of [capacitance](#).⁸³
- The properties of capacitors in [series](#)⁹³ and [parallel](#)⁹¹ circuits.
- Capacitor circuit [time constant](#)⁹⁴ and how [voltage](#)⁹⁵ increases and decreases across a capacitor.
- [Inductors](#)⁸⁹ and the theory of [inductance](#).⁸⁸
- The properties of inductors in [series](#)⁹³ and [parallel](#)⁹¹ circuits.
- Inductor circuit [time constant](#)⁹⁴ and how [current](#)⁸⁴ increases and decreases through an inductor.
- [Transformers](#)⁹⁴ and the theory of [mutual inductance](#).⁹⁰

Exercises:

[Capacitor exercise](#)²³⁷

[Inductor exercise](#)²⁴⁴

[Transformer exercise](#)²⁵¹

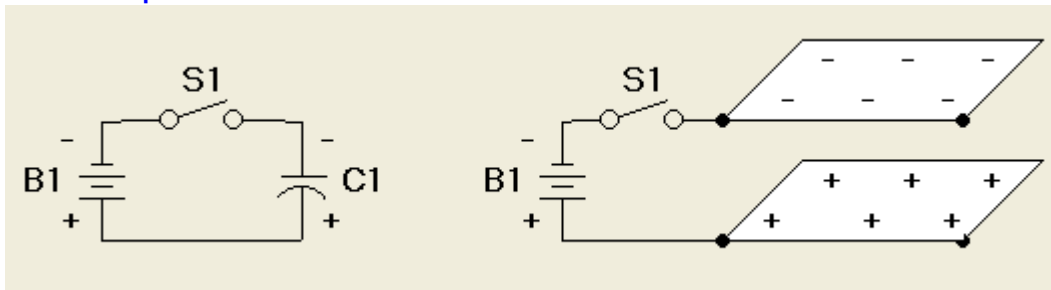
Related topics:

[General tutorial introduction and instructions](#)²⁰¹

[Tutorial topic tree](#)²⁰³

Capacitors, Inductors and Transformers Tutorial

Capacitor Exercise



Theory

[Capacitance](#)⁸³ and the relationship to [voltage](#)⁹⁵ and [current](#)⁸⁴ can be found in [capacitor theory](#).²³⁸

[Capacitors in series and parallel](#)²³⁹ describes how to calculate the resulting capacitance of [series](#)⁹³ and [parallel](#)⁹¹ connected capacitors.

[Capacitor circuit time constant](#)²⁴⁰ describes how voltage increases and decreases across a capacitor.

Examples

The use of capacitors in series and parallel circuits and the calculation of a resistor-capacitor circuit's time constant can be found in [examples](#).²⁴⁰

Knowledge test

Review questions can be found in [knowledge test](#).²⁴²

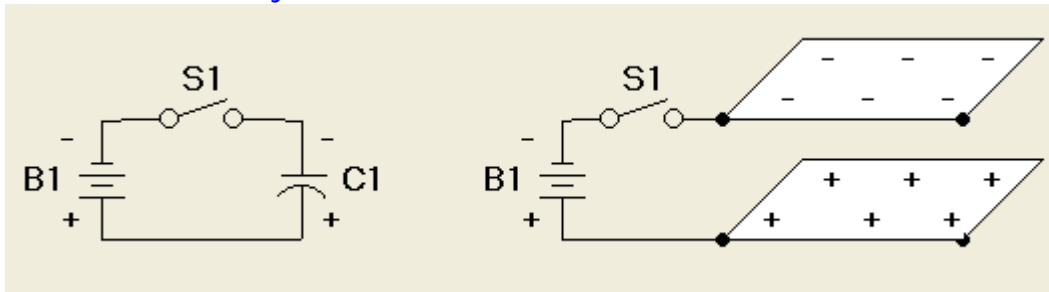
Related topics:

[Inductor exercise](#)²⁴⁴

Capacitors, Inductors and Transformers Tutorial

Capacitor Exercise

Theory



A [capacitor](#)⁸² in its simplest form, is two metal plates placed very close together, but not touching. On the right hand side of the above diagram is a circuit composed of a battery [B1](#), a switch [S1](#) and two plates forming a capacitor [C1](#).

When the switch is closed, the circuit path is completed, and an electric charge or [current](#)⁸⁴ will migrate from the battery to the capacitor. The electric current will flow until the [voltage](#)⁹⁵ across the capacitor equals the battery voltage. This charging process is usually very fast.

If the switch is opened, i.e. the circuit path is broken, the electric charge will remain on the capacitor. [Energy](#)⁸⁶ has been transferred from the battery to the capacitor.

The amount of charge or quantity of energy which can be placed on a capacitor is proportional to the applied [voltage](#)⁹⁵ and the [capacitance](#)⁸³ of the capacitor. The larger the metal plate area, the smaller the spacing between the plates, and the greater the ability of the material between the plates to store energy, the greater the capacitance.

In a capacitor, the material between the plates is called the [dielectric](#).⁸⁴ Some materials are better at storing energy than others and are thus better dielectrics. For example, glass is 5 to 10 times better than air.

In a [DC](#)⁸⁶ circuit, current flows until the capacitor is charged. Once the capacitor is charged, i.e. the capacitor voltage equals the applied voltage, no further current flows.

In an [AC](#)⁸¹ circuit, current flows in one direction until the capacitor is charged. When the current direction changes, the capacitor attempts to hold the voltage at the charged level and thus [capacitance](#)⁸³ has the property that it opposes a change in voltage.

Capacitance is measured in [farads](#)⁸⁶ in honor of Michael Faraday. In electronic circuits, the usual measure of capacitance is microfarads (μF) or picofarads (pF), $1\text{e-}6$ or $1\text{e-}12$ farads respectively.

Related topics:

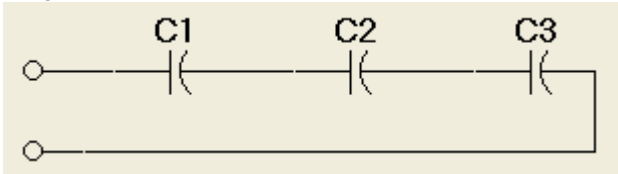
[Capacitors in series and parallel](#)²³⁹
[Capacitor circuit time constant](#)²⁴⁰
[Capacitor examples](#)²⁴⁰
[Capacitor knowledge test](#)²⁴²
[Capacitor exercise](#)²³⁷
[Capacitors, inductors and transformers tutorial](#)²³⁷
[Unit conversion](#)⁷⁵
[Voltage](#)⁹⁵

Capacitors, Inductors and Transformers Tutorial

Capacitor Exercise

Capacitors in Series and Parallel

Capacitors in series



Capacitors are sometimes connected in [series](#)⁹³ to allow the set of capacitors to withstand a larger [voltage](#).⁹⁵ The general formula for finding the total capacitance of capacitors connected in series is

$$C \text{ (total)} = \frac{1}{\frac{1}{C1} + \frac{1}{C2} + \frac{1}{C3} + \dots}$$

Note: The total capacitance of capacitors in series is always less than the lowest individual capacitance value.

For two capacitors in series, the formula can be arranged as

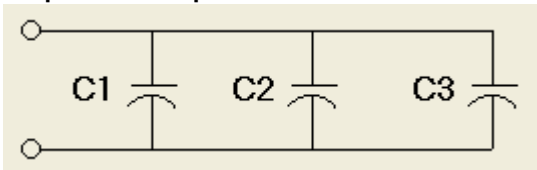
$$C \text{ (total)} = \frac{C1 \times C2}{C1 + C2}$$

For N capacitors in series of equal value C , another special case formula can be used

$$C \text{ (total)} = \frac{C}{N}$$

When capacitors are connected in series, the applied [voltage](#)⁹⁵ is divided between them in a similar manner to [resistors in series](#).²¹²

Capacitors in parallel



[Capacitors](#)⁸² are connected in [parallel](#)⁹¹ to obtain a larger total [capacitance](#)⁸³ than provided by each component. The total capacitance of capacitors connected in parallel is the sum of the individual capacitances. In the above circuit

$$C \text{ (total)} = C1 + C2 + C3$$

In general, the total capacitance for capacitors connected in parallel with capacitances $C1$, $C2$, $C3$, $C4$, ... is

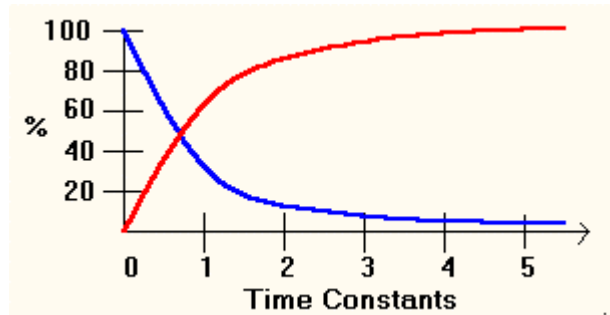
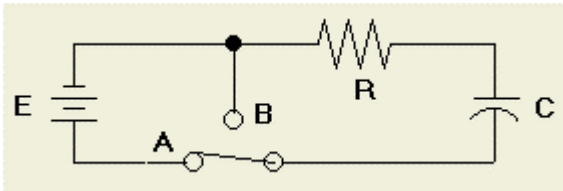
$$C \text{ (total)} = C1 + C2 + C3 + C4 + \dots$$

Related topics:

Capacitors, Inductors and Transformers Tutorial

Capacitor Exercise

Capacitor Circuit Time Constant



If a [voltage⁹⁵](#) is applied directly across a [capacitor⁸²](#) it will become fully charged almost instantly. However, if the circuit contains any [resistance⁹²](#), the [current⁸⁴](#) flow will be limited and thus it will take a period of time before the capacitor becomes fully charged.

In the above circuit, when the switch is moved to position [A](#), the capacitor will charge at a rate shown by the [red line](#) in the above graph. When the switch is moved to position [B](#), the capacitor will discharge at a rate shown by the [blue line](#) in the above graph.

The rate of charge or discharge of a resistor-capacitor circuit is governed by the circuit's [time constant⁹⁴](#). The formula for a resistor-capacitor circuit time constant is shown below.

$$t = R \times C$$

where t = time constant (seconds)

R = resistance (ohms)

C = capacitance (farads)

If charging (circuit position [A](#) above), after one time constant seconds, the capacitor will be [63%](#) charged and after five time constant seconds, the capacitor will be [99%](#) charged (see the [red line](#) in the above graph).

If discharging (circuit position [B](#) above), after one time constant seconds, the capacitor will have only [37%](#) of its initial value and after five time constant seconds, the capacitor will have only [1%](#) of its initial value (see the [blue line](#) in the above graph).

Related topics:

[Inductor circuit time constant²⁴⁶](#)

[Capacitor examples²⁴⁰](#)

[Capacitor knowledge test²⁴²](#)

[Capacitor exercise²³⁷](#)

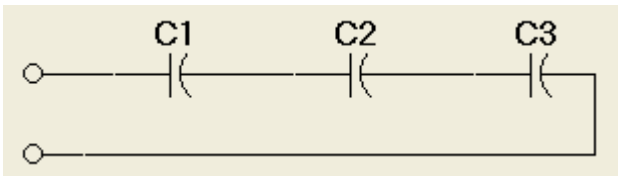
[Capacitors, inductors and transformers tutorial²³⁷](#)

Capacitors, Inductors and Transformers Tutorial

Capacitor Exercise

Examples

Series Example 1



Circuit values

$$\begin{aligned} C1 &= 1 \mu\text{F} \\ C2 &= 5 \mu\text{F} \\ C3 &= 20 \mu\text{F} \end{aligned}$$

As described in [capacitors in series and parallel theory](#),²³⁹ the total [capacitance](#)⁸³ of [capacitors](#)⁸² in [series](#)⁹³ may be found using the following general formula.

$$C(\text{total}) = \frac{1}{\frac{1}{C1} + \frac{1}{C2} + \frac{1}{C3} + \dots}$$

Using the circuit values

$$\begin{aligned} C(\text{total}) &= 1 / (1/1 + 1/5 + 1/20) \\ &= 1 / (1 + 0.2 + 0.05) \\ &= 1 / 1.25 \\ &= 0.8 \mu\text{F} \end{aligned}$$

Series Example 2

Given a circuit with two capacitors in series with circuit values

$$\begin{aligned} C1 &= 10 \mu\text{F} \\ C2 &= 40 \mu\text{F} \end{aligned}$$

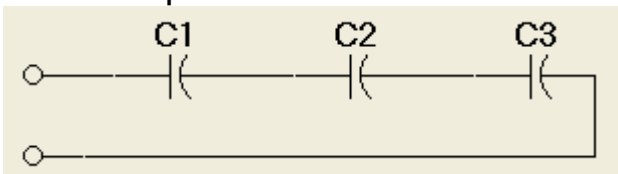
As described in [capacitors in series and parallel theory](#),²³⁹ the total [capacitance](#)⁸³ of two [capacitors](#)⁸² in [series](#)⁹³ may be found using the following special case formula.

$$C(\text{total}) = \frac{C1 \times C2}{C1 + C2}$$

Using the above values

$$\begin{aligned} C(\text{total}) &= (10 \times 40) / (10 + 40) \\ &= 400 / 50 \\ &= 8 \mu\text{F} \end{aligned}$$

Series Example 3



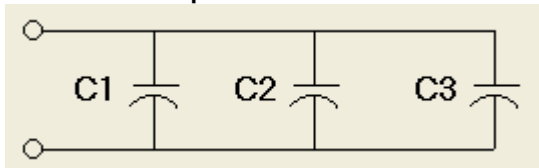
As described in [capacitors in series and parallel theory](#),²³⁹ the total [capacitance](#)⁸³ of equal value [capacitors](#)⁸² in [series](#)⁹³ may be found using the following special case formula.

$$C(\text{total}) = \frac{C}{N}$$

Given a circuit with three equal value capacitors in series, each with a value of $15 \mu\text{F}$, using the above formula

$$\begin{aligned} C(\text{total}) &= 15 / 3 \\ &= 5 \mu\text{F} \end{aligned}$$

Parallel Example 1



Circuit values

$$C1 = 10 \mu F$$

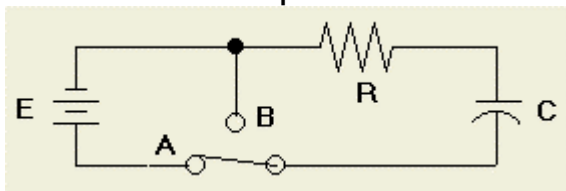
$$C2 = 20 \mu F$$

$$C3 = 30 \mu F$$

The total [capacitance](#)⁸³ of [capacitors](#)⁸² in [parallel](#)⁹¹ is the sum of the individual capacitances. In the above circuit

$$\begin{aligned} C \text{ (total)} &= C1 + C2 + C3 \\ &= 10 + 20 + 30 \\ &= 60 \mu F \end{aligned}$$

Time Constant Example 1



Circuit values

$$R = 1000 \text{ ohms}$$

$$C = 20 \mu F$$

The circuit's [time constant](#)⁹⁴ can be calculated as

$$\begin{aligned} t &= R \times C \\ &= 1000 \times 20e-6 \\ &= 0.02 \text{ seconds} \end{aligned}$$

Thus, if charging, it will take **0.02 seconds** for the capacitor to reach **63%** of its final value and **0.1 seconds** (0.02 x 5) for the capacitor to reach **99%** of its final value.

Related topics:

[Capacitor theory](#)²³⁸

[Capacitor exercise](#)²³⁷

[Capacitor knowledge test](#)²⁴²

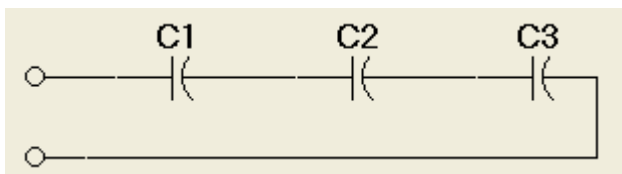
[Capacitors, inductors and transformers tutorial](#)²³⁷

Capacitors, Inductors and Transformers Tutorial

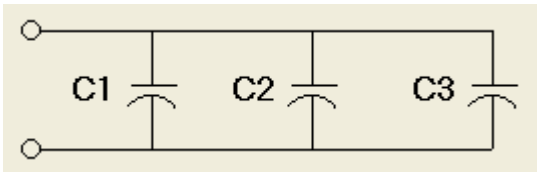
Capacitor Exercise

Knowledge Test

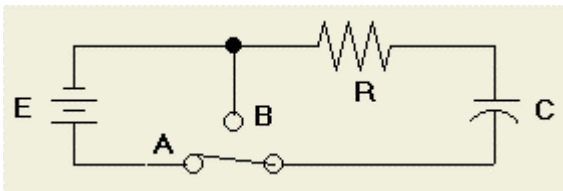
1. The total capacitance of capacitors in series is always _____ than the lowest individual capacitance value.



2. Given a series circuit with 3 capacitors with values 10, 25, and 50 μF , what is the total capacitance? [\(answer\)\(18\)](#)²⁹³
3. Given a series circuit with 3 capacitors with values 50, 75, and 100 μF , what is the total capacitance?



4. Given a parallel circuit with 3 capacitors with values 10, 25, and 50 μF , what is the total capacitance? [\(answer\)\(19\)](#)²⁹³
5. Given a parallel circuit with 3 capacitors with values 50, 75, and 100 μF , what is the total capacitance?



6. Given a resistor-capacitor circuit with values $R = 2.5\text{K}$ and $C = 2 \mu\text{F}$, what is the circuit's time constant? [\(answer\)\(20\)](#)²⁹³
7. How long will it take this circuit to charge up to 99% of its final value?

Related topics:

[Capacitor theory](#)²³⁸

[Capacitors in series and parallel](#)²³⁹

[Capacitor circuit time constant](#)²⁴⁰

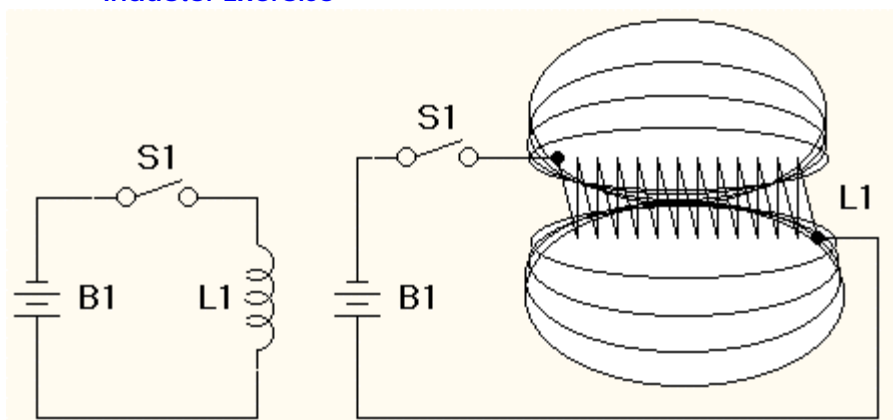
[Capacitor examples](#)²⁴⁰

[Capacitor exercise](#)²³⁷

[Capacitors, inductors and transformers tutorial](#)²³⁷

Capacitors, Inductors and Transformers Tutorial

Inductor Exercise



Theory

[Inductance](#)⁸⁸ and the relationship to [voltage](#)⁹⁵ and [current](#)⁸⁴ can be found in [inductor theory](#).²⁴⁴

[Inductors in series and parallel](#)²⁴⁵ describes how to calculate the resulting inductance of [series](#)⁹³ and [parallel](#)⁹¹ connected inductors.

[Inductor circuit time constant](#)²⁴⁶ describes how current increases and decreases through an inductor.

Examples

The use of inductors in series and parallel circuits and the calculation of a resistor-inductor circuit's time constant can be found in [examples](#).²⁴⁷

Knowledge test

Review questions can be found in [knowledge test](#).²⁴⁹

Related topics:

[Transformer exercise](#)²⁵¹

[Capacitor exercise](#)²³⁷

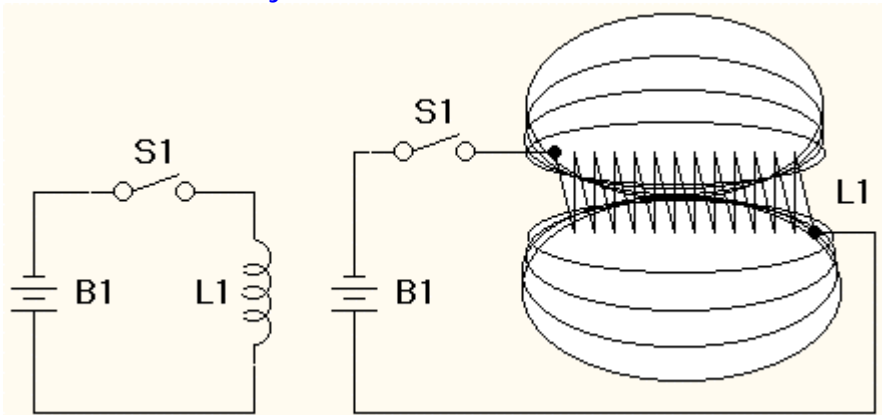
[Capacitors, inductors and transformers tutorial](#)²³⁷

[Tutorial topic tree](#)²⁰³

Capacitors, Inductors and Transformers Tutorial

Inductor Exercise

Theory



An [inductor](#)⁸⁹ in its simplest form, is a coil of wire. On the right hand side of the above diagram is a circuit composed of a battery [B1](#), a switch [S1](#) and a coil of wire forming an inductor [L1](#).

When the switch is closed, the circuit path is completed, and an electric [current](#)⁸⁴ will flow from the battery, through the switch and through the inductor. When current flows through a coil, a magnetic field is generated. [Energy](#)⁸⁶ is transferred from the battery to the inductor to generate the magnetic field.

The amount of energy which can be placed in an inductor is proportional to the [current](#)⁸⁴ and the [inductance](#)⁸⁸ of the inductor. Inductance depends on the physical characteristics of the inductor. The greater the number of turns of wire, the greater the inductance. The greater the ability to form a magnetic field, the greater the inductance, i.e. a coil will have a greater inductance if placed on an iron core.

In a [DC](#)⁸⁶ circuit, current flows continuously and the inductor's magnetic field is constant.

In an [AC](#)⁸¹ circuit, current flows in one direction until the magnetic field is fully formed. When the current direction changes, the magnetic field attempts to hold the current at the previous level and thus [inductance](#)⁸⁸ has the property that it opposes a change in current.

Inductance is measured in [henrys](#).⁸⁸

Related topics:

[Inductors in series and parallel](#)²⁴⁵

[Inductor circuit time constant](#)²⁴⁶

[Inductor examples](#)²⁴⁷

[Inductor knowledge test](#)²⁴⁹

[Inductor exercise](#)²⁴⁴

[Capacitors, inductors and transformers tutorial](#)²³⁷

[Voltage](#)⁹⁵

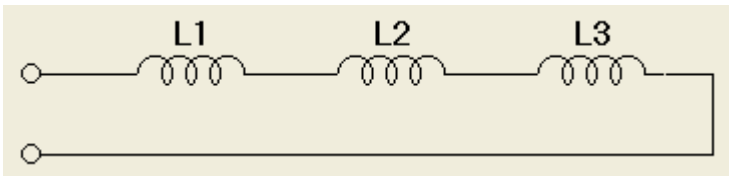
[Current](#)⁸⁴

Capacitors, Inductors and Transformers Tutorial

Inductor Exercise

Inductors in Series and Parallel

Inductors in series



The total [inductance](#)⁸⁸ of [inductors](#)⁸⁹ connected in [series](#)⁹³ is the sum of the individual inductances. In the above circuit

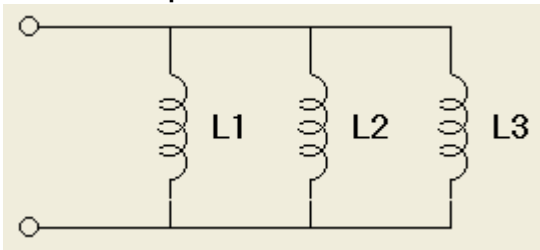
$$L \text{ (total)} = L1 + L2 + L3$$

In general, the total inductance for inductors connected in series with inductances $L1, L2, L3, L4, \dots$ is

$$L \text{ (total)} = L1 + L2 + L3 + L4 + \dots$$

When inductors are connected in series, the applied [voltage](#)⁹⁵ is divided between them in a similar manner to [resistors in series](#).²¹²

Inductors in parallel



The general formula for finding the total [inductance](#)⁸⁸ of [inductors](#)⁸⁹ connected in [parallel](#)⁹¹ is

$$L \text{ (total)} = \frac{1}{\frac{1}{L1} + \frac{1}{L2} + \frac{1}{L3} + \dots}$$

Note: The total inductance of inductors in parallel is always less than the lowest individual inductance value.

For two inductors in parallel, the formula can be arranged as

$$L \text{ (total)} = \frac{L1 \times L2}{L1 + L2}$$

For N inductors in parallel of equal value L , another special case formula can be used

$$L \text{ (total)} = \frac{L}{N}$$

Related topics:

[Inductor examples](#)²⁴⁷

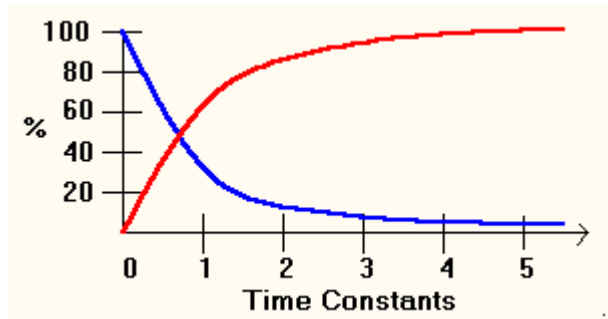
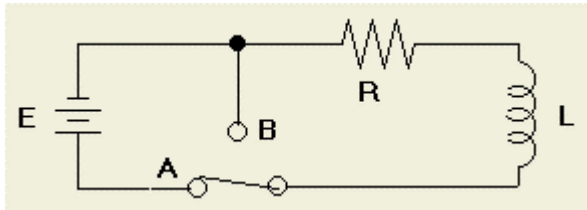
[Inductor exercise](#)²⁴⁴

[Capacitors, inductors and transformers tutorial](#)²³⁷

Capacitors, Inductors and Transformers Tutorial

Inductor Exercise

Inductor Circuit Time Constant



In the above circuit, when the switch is moved from position **B**, to position **A**, a [current](#)⁸⁴ will begin to flow through the [inductor](#)⁸⁹ which causes the inductor's magnetic field to increase. This changing magnetic field causes a "back" [voltage](#)⁹⁵ that tends to counteract the initial applied voltage, thus slowing the instantaneous increase in current.

Assuming the inductor has a [resistance](#)⁹² near zero, the final circuit current, given by [Ohm's law](#)⁹⁰ will be $I = E/R$. The current will exponentially increase to the final value as shown by the **red line** in the above graph.

When the switch is moved to position **B**, the inductor magnetic field will collapse and the current will decrease to zero at a rate shown by the **blue line** in the above graph.

The rate of change of current of a resistor-inductor circuit is governed by the circuit's [time constant](#)⁹⁴. The formula for a resistor-inductor circuit time constant is shown below.

$$t = \frac{L}{R}$$

where **t** = time constant (seconds)
L = inductance (henrys)
R = resistance (ohms)

With an applied voltage (circuit position **A** above), after one time constant seconds, the inductor current will be **63%** of its final value and after five time constant seconds, the inductor current will be **99%** of its final value (see the **red line** in the above graph).

If allowed to discharge (circuit position **B** above), after one time constant seconds, the inductor current will be **37%** of its initial value and after five time constant seconds, the inductor current will be **1%** of its initial value (see the **blue line** in the above graph).

Related topics:

[Capacitor circuit time constant](#)²⁴⁰

[Inductor examples](#)²⁴⁷

[Inductor knowledge test](#)²⁴⁹

[Inductor exercise](#)²⁴⁴

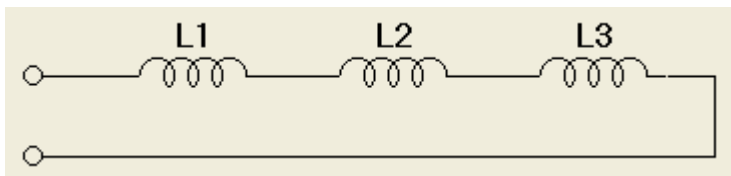
[Capacitors, inductors and transformers tutorial](#)²³⁷

Capacitors, Inductors and Transformers Tutorial

Inductor Exercise

Examples

Series Example 1



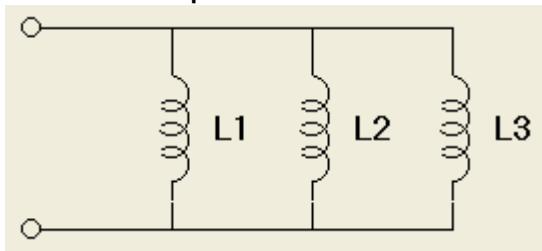
Circuit values

$$\begin{aligned} L1 &= 10 \text{ mH} \\ L2 &= 20 \text{ mH} \\ L3 &= 30 \text{ mH} \end{aligned}$$

The total [inductance](#)⁸⁸ of [inductors](#)⁸⁹ in [series](#)⁹³ is the sum of the individual inductances. In the above circuit

$$\begin{aligned} L \text{ (total)} &= L1 + L2 + L3 \\ &= 10 + 20 + 30 \\ &= 60 \text{ mH} \end{aligned}$$

Parallel Example 1



Circuit values

$$\begin{aligned} L1 &= 1 \text{ mH} \\ L2 &= 5 \text{ mH} \\ L3 &= 20 \text{ mH} \end{aligned}$$

As described in [inductors in series and parallel theory](#)²⁴⁵ the total [inductance](#)⁸⁸ of [inductors](#)⁸⁹ in [parallel](#)⁹¹ may be found using the following general formula.

$$L \text{ (total)} = \frac{1}{\frac{1}{L1} + \frac{1}{L2} + \frac{1}{L3} + \dots}$$

Using the circuit values

$$\begin{aligned} L \text{ (total)} &= 1 / (1/1 + 1/5 + 1/20) \\ &= 1 / (1 + 0.2 + 0.05) \\ &= 1 / 1.25 \\ &= 0.8 \text{ mH} \end{aligned}$$

Parallel Example 2

Given a circuit with two inductors in series with circuit values

$$\begin{aligned} L1 &= 10 \text{ mH} \\ L2 &= 40 \text{ mH} \end{aligned}$$

As described in [inductors in series and parallel theory](#)²⁴⁵ the total [inductance](#)⁸⁸ of two [inductors](#)⁸⁹ in [parallel](#)⁹¹ may be found using the following special case formula.

$$L \text{ (total)} = \frac{L1 \times L2}{L1 + L2}$$

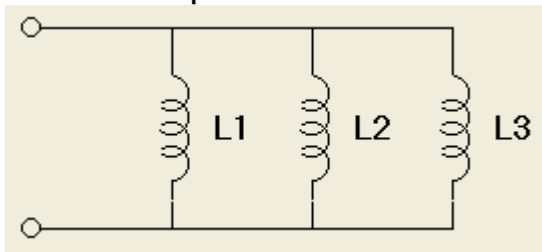
Using the above values

$$\begin{aligned} L \text{ (total)} &= (10 \times 40) / (10 + 40) \end{aligned}$$

$$= 400 / 50$$

$$= 8 \text{ mH}$$

Parallel Example 3



As described in [inductors in series and parallel theory](#),²³⁹ the total [inductance](#)⁸⁸ of equal value [inductors](#)⁸⁹ in [parallel](#)⁹¹ may be found using the following special case formula.

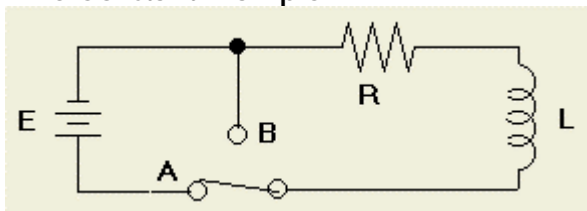
$$L \text{ (total)} = \frac{L}{N}$$

Given a circuit with three equal value inductors in series, each with a value of 15 mH, using the above formula

$$L \text{ (total)} = 15 / 3$$

$$= 5 \text{ mH}$$

Time Constant Example 1



Circuit values

$$R = 1 \text{ K ohms}$$

$$L = 200 \text{ mH}$$

The circuit's [time constant](#)⁹⁴ can be calculated as

$$t = L / R$$

$$= 200\text{e-}3 / 1\text{e}3$$

$$= 200\text{e-}6 \text{ seconds}$$

$$= 200 \mu \text{ seconds}$$

Thus, if a voltage is applied, it will take 200 μ seconds for the inductor current to reach 63% of its final value and 0.1 milliseconds (200e-6 x 5) for the inductor current to reach 99% of its final value.

Related topics:

[Inductor theory](#)²⁴⁴

[Inductors in series and parallel](#)²⁴⁵

[Inductor circuit time constant](#)²⁴⁶

[Inductor knowledge test](#)²⁴⁹

[Inductor exercise](#)²⁴⁴

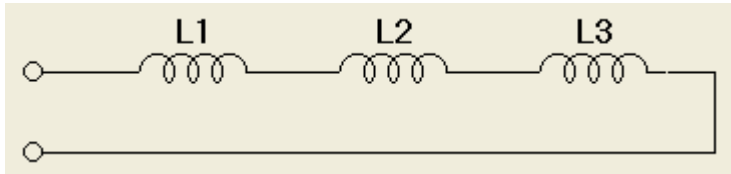
[Capacitors, inductors and transformers tutorial](#)²³⁷

Capacitors, Inductors and Transformers Tutorial

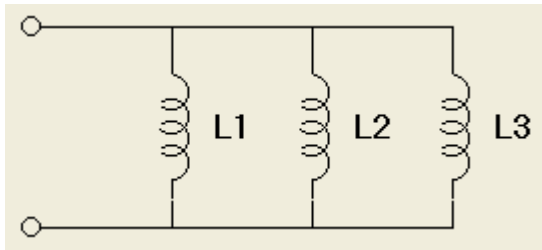
Inductor Exercise

Knowledge Test

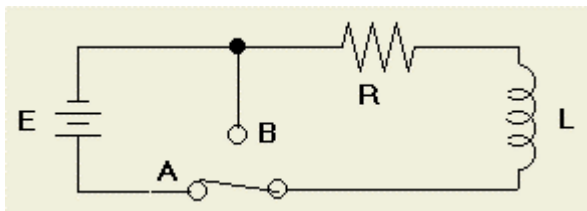
1. The total inductance of inductors in parallel is always _____ than the lowest individual inductance value.



2. Given a series circuit with 3 inductors with values 10, 25, and 50 mH, what is the total inductance? [\(answer\)\(21\)](#)²⁹³
3. Given a series circuit with 3 inductors with values 50, 75, and 100 mH, what is the total inductance?



4. Given a parallel circuit with 3 inductors with values 10, 25, and 50 mH, what is the total inductance? [\(answer\)\(22\)](#)²⁹⁴
5. Given a parallel circuit with 3 inductors with values 50, 75, and 100 mH, what is the total inductance?



6. Given a resistor-inductor circuit with values $R = 2.5K$ and $L = 20$ mH, what is the circuit's time constant? [\(answer\)\(23\)](#)²⁹⁴
7. How long will it take this circuit's current to increase up to 99% of its final value?

Related topics:

[Inductor theory](#)²⁴⁴

[Inductors in series and parallel](#)²⁴⁵

[Inductor circuit time constant](#)²⁴⁶

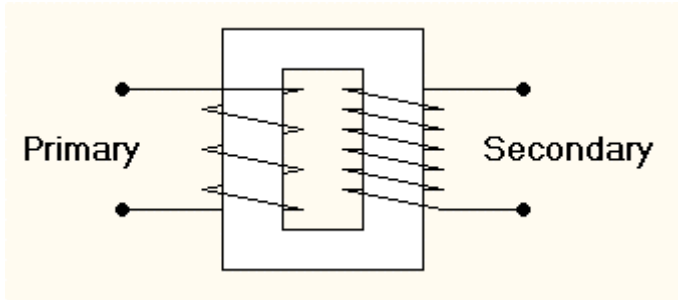
[Inductor examples](#)²⁴⁷

[Inductor exercise](#)²⁴⁴

[Capacitors, inductors and transformers tutorial](#)²³⁷

Capacitors, Inductors and Transformers Tutorial

Transformer Exercise



Theory

Basic transformer principles can be found in [theory](#).²⁵¹

Examples

Calculation of basic transformer parameters can be found in [examples](#).²⁵³

Knowledge test

Review questions can be found in [knowledge test](#).²⁵³

Related topics:

[Inductor exercise](#)²⁴⁴

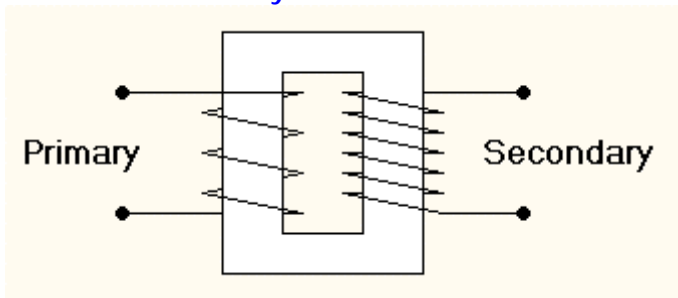
[Capacitors, inductors and transformers tutorial](#)²³⁷

[Tutorial topic tree](#)²⁰³

Capacitors, Inductors and Transformers Tutorial

Transformer Exercise

Theory



A [transformer](#)⁹⁴ in its simplest form, is two coils of wire, or [inductors](#),⁸⁹ physically close or coupled together in some manner such that their magnetic fields can interact. In the above diagram, the two coils are wound on a shared core. An [AC](#)⁸¹ voltage is applied to the transformer input, called the [Primary](#). This causes a constantly changing magnetic field in the primary coil, the magnetic field transfers [energy](#)⁸⁶ to the output coil, called the [Secondary](#) via the transformer core. The changing magnetic field induces a voltage in the secondary coil.

Transformers transfer energy from one circuit to another without a direct connection and can increase or decrease [voltage](#)⁹⁵ levels.

Transformers work on the principle of [mutual inductance](#).⁹⁰ Mutual inductance is the property between two [current](#)⁸⁴ carrying coils, when the magnetic field of one coil links with the magnetic field of the second coil. For a given rate of change of current in one coil, the amount of mutual inductance determines the amount of electromotive force, or voltage induced in the second coil.

Mutual inductance is greatest when all of the magnetic field of one coil "cuts" the windings of the second coil. The ratio of actual mutual inductance to the theoretical maximum is called the coefficient of coupling. This ratio can approach 1 or 100% if the coils are close together and wound on an shared iron core.

At low frequencies, for a given changing magnetic field, the induced voltage in a coil is proportional to the number of turns in the coil. In a transformer, the coil voltages are proportional to the number of turns in each coil and can be expressed in the following equation.

$$\frac{E_p}{E_s} = \frac{N_p}{N_s}$$

Where E_p = Primary (input) voltage
 E_s = Secondary (output) voltage
 N_p = Number of turns on primary
 N_s = Number of turns on secondary

Note N_p/N_s is known as the turns ratio.

If any three values are known, the above equation can be changed to determine the unknown fourth value. For example, if the input voltage and turns ratio are know, the following equation can be used to calculate the output voltage.

$$E_s = E_p \times \frac{N_s}{N_p}$$

If the input voltage, the desired output voltage and primary coil turns are know, the following equation can be used to calculate the required secondary coil turns.

$$N_s = N_p \times \frac{E_s}{E_p}$$

The turns ratio of an existing transformer can be determined by applying a known voltage to the primary winding and measuring the output voltage on the secondary and applying the following equation.

$$\text{Turns ratio} = \frac{N_p}{N_s} = \frac{E_p}{E_s}$$

A transformer transfers [power](#)²⁵³ from the primary coil to the secondary coil according to the following formula.

$$P_o = n \times P_i$$

Where P_o = Power output from the secondary
 P_i = Power input to the primary
 n = Transformer efficiency factor

An ideal transformer would have an efficiency factor of 1.0. In reality, transformers have a lower efficiency factor due to copper, eddy current and hysteresis losses which vary depending on the operating frequency and current.

Related topics:

[Transformer examples](#)²⁵³

[Transformer knowledge test](#)²⁵³

[Transformer exercise](#)²⁵¹

[Capacitors, inductors and transformers tutorial](#)²³⁷

[Inductor exercise](#)²⁴⁴

[Voltage](#)⁹⁵

[Current](#)⁸⁴

Capacitors, Inductors and Transformers Tutorial

Transformer Exercise

Examples

Example 1

Given an input voltage of 100 volts, a primary coil with 100 turns and a secondary coil of 150 turns, what is the output voltage?

$$\begin{aligned} E_s &= E_p \times N_s/N_p \\ &= 100 \times 150/100 \\ &= 150 \text{ volts} \end{aligned}$$

Example 2

Given an input voltage of 100 volts, a desired output voltage of 250 volts and a primary coil with 100 turns, what is the required number of turns for the secondary coil?

$$\begin{aligned} N_s &= N_p \times E_s/E_p \\ &= 100 \times 250/100 \\ &= 250 \text{ turns} \end{aligned}$$

Example 3

Given an input voltage of 100 volts and a measured output voltage of 500 volts, what is the turns ratio of the transformer?

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Turns ratio} &= E_p/E_s \\ &= 100/500 \\ &= 0.2 \end{aligned}$$

Example 4

Given an input voltage of 100 volts, an input current of 2 amps and an efficiency factor of 0.85, what is the expected output power?

$$\begin{aligned} P_o &= \eta \times P_i \\ &= 0.85 \times (E_i \times I_i) \\ &= 0.85 \times 100 \times 2 \\ &= 170 \text{ watts} \end{aligned}$$

Related topics:

[Transformer theory](#)²⁵¹

[Transformer knowledge test](#)²⁵³

[Transformer exercise](#)²⁵¹

[Capacitors, inductors and transformers tutorial](#)²³⁷

Capacitors, Inductors and Transformers Tutorial

Transformer Exercise

Knowledge test

1. What are the common names for transformer inputs and outputs? [\(answer\)\(1\)](#)²⁹¹
2. Briefly describe how a transformer works.
3. Define mutual inductance. [\(answer\)](#)⁹⁰
4. Define coefficient of coupling.

5. Given an input voltage of 750 volts, a primary coil with 100 turns and a secondary coil of 300 turns, what is the output voltage?
6. Given an input voltage of 15 volts, a desired output voltage of 45 volts and a primary coil with 100 turns, what is the required number of turns for the secondary coil?
7. Given an input voltage of 50 volts and a measured output voltage of 250 volts, what is the turns ratio of the transformer?
8. Given an input voltage of 120 volts, an input current of 5 amps and an efficiency factor of 0.9, what is the expected output power? [\(answer\)\(2\)](#)²⁹¹
9. Given an input voltage of 50 volts, an input current of 0.5 amps, an output voltage of 25 volts and an output current of 0.8 amps, what is the transformer efficiency?

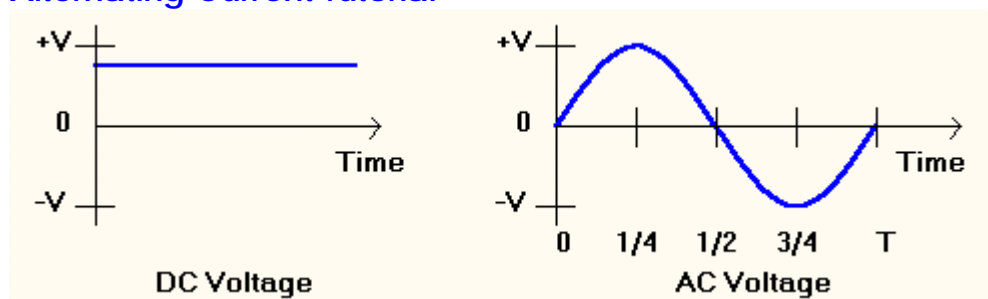
Related topics:

[Transformer theory](#)²⁵¹

[Transformer exercise](#)²⁵¹

[Capacitors, inductors and transformers tutorial](#)²³⁷

Alternating Current Tutorial



This tutorial covers the following topics:

- [Alternating current](#)⁸¹ theory.
- The characteristics of [capacitors](#)⁸² and [inductors](#)⁸⁹ in [AC](#)⁸¹ circuits.
- Series resistor-inductor-capacitor (RLC) circuits and resonance.

Exercises:

[Basic alternating current principles exercise](#)²⁵⁵

[Capacitors and inductors in AC circuits exercise](#)²⁶¹

[Series resistor-inductor-capacitor \(RLC\) circuits exercise](#)²⁶²

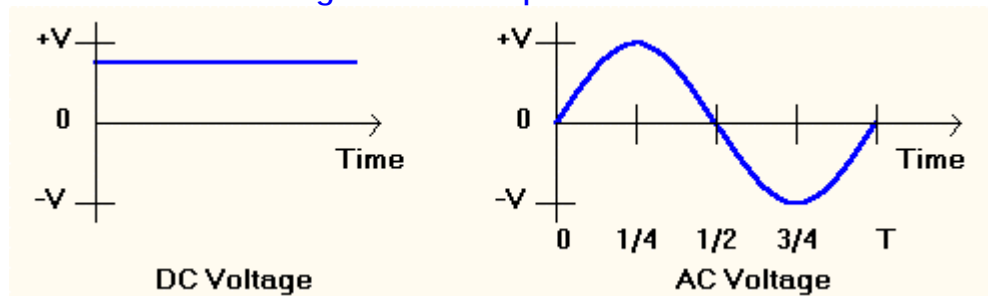
Related topics:

[General tutorial introduction and instructions](#)²⁰¹

[Tutorial topic tree](#)²⁰³

Alternating Current Tutorial

Basic Alternating Current Principles Exercise



Theory

Alternating current principles can be found in [theory](#).²⁵⁶

Examples

Calculation of basic alternating current parameters can be found in [examples](#).²⁵⁷

Knowledge test

Review questions can be found in [knowledge test](#).²⁵⁸

Related topics:

[Inductor exercise](#)²⁴⁴

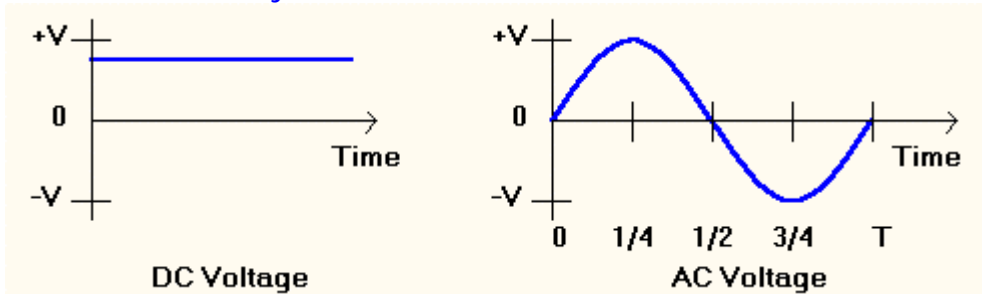
[Alternating current tutorial](#)²⁵⁵

[Tutorial topic tree](#)²⁰³

Alternating Current Tutorial

Basic Alternating Current Principles Exercise

Theory



As shown in the left graph above, a direct current or DC⁸⁶ voltage is constant. Examples of DC voltage sources include household toy batteries and 12 volt automotive batteries.

As shown in the right graph above, an alternating current or AC⁸¹ voltage is constantly changing in time. The most common AC voltage source is the 110-220 volt power supplied by the local power company.

The following sections describe alternating current principles and standard measurements.

Cycle

As shown above, an AC voltage increases to a maximum value in one direction, decreases to zero, reverses, increases to a maximum in the other direction, then changes back to zero. Each time this pattern is repeated, one cycle has occurred.

Frequency

The number of cycles per second is called frequency.⁸⁷ Frequency is measured in hertz.⁸⁸ One hertz is equal to one complete cycle per second. In North America, the standard AC voltage frequency supplied by the power company is 60 cycles per second or 60 hertz.

Wave period

The amount of time an alternating current takes to complete one cycle is called the wave period. In the above diagram, the AC voltage wave period is T seconds. The relationship between frequency and the wave period is shown below.

$$F \text{ (hertz)} = \frac{1}{T \text{ (seconds)}}$$

Peak voltage

The peak voltage, V_p is measured from the zero reference to either the maximum positive or maximum negative value. In the above diagram $V_p = V$.

Peak-to-peak voltage

The peak-to-peak voltage, V_{pp} is measured from the maximum positive value to the maximum negative value. In the above diagram $V_{pp} = 2 * V$.

Average voltage

The average voltage, V_{avg} of a sine wave may be calculated from the peak voltage as

$$V_{avg} = 0.637 * V_p$$

Effective or RMS voltage

The effective or RMS value of an AC voltage source supplies the same power as an equivalent valued DC source. The RMS voltage, V_{rms} of a sine wave may be calculated from the peak voltage as

$$V_{rms} = \frac{V_p}{\sqrt{2}} = \frac{V_p}{1.414} = 0.707 * V_p$$

Related topics:

[Alternating current examples](#)²⁵⁷

[Alternating current knowledge test](#)²⁵⁸

[Basic alternating current principles exercise](#)²⁵⁵

[Alternating current tutorial](#)²⁵⁵

[Voltage](#)⁹⁵

[Current](#)⁸⁴

Alternating Current Tutorial

Basic Alternating Current Principles Exercise

Examples

Example 1

Determine the frequency if one cycle takes 5 milliseconds to complete.

$$\begin{aligned} F \text{ (hertz)} &= 1 / T \text{ (seconds)} \\ &= 1 / 0.005 \text{ seconds} \\ &= 200 \text{ Hz} \end{aligned}$$

Example 2

Determine the wave period if the frequency is 60 Hz.

$$\begin{aligned} F \text{ (hertz)} &= 1 / T \text{ (seconds)} \\ \text{or} \\ T \text{ (seconds)} &= 1 / F \text{ (hertz)} \\ &= 1 / 60 \\ &= 0.167 \text{ seconds} \\ &= 167 \text{ milliseconds} \end{aligned}$$

Example 3

Given a sine wave with a peak voltage of 35 volts, determine the average voltage.

$$\begin{aligned} V_{avg} &= 0.637 * V_p \\ &= 0.637 * 35 \\ &= 22.3 \text{ volts} \end{aligned}$$

Example 4

Given a sine wave with a peak voltage of 311 volts, determine the RMS voltage.

$$\begin{aligned} V_{rms} &= 0.707 * V_p \\ &= 0.707 * 311 \\ &= 220 \text{ volts} \end{aligned}$$

Related topics:

[Alternating current theory](#)²⁵⁶

[Alternating current knowledge test](#)²⁵⁸

[Basic alternating current principles exercise](#)²⁵⁵

[Alternating current tutorial](#)²⁵⁵

[Voltage](#)⁹⁵

[Current](#)⁸⁴

Alternating Current Tutorial

Basic Alternating Current Principles Exercise

Knowledge test

1. A [DC](#)⁸⁶ voltage is _____.
2. An [AC](#)⁸¹ voltage is _____ in time.
3. The number of complete cycles per second is called _____ and is measured in _____.
[\(answer\)\(13\)](#)²⁹²
4. Given a wave period of [1 millisecond](#), what is the frequency? [\(answer\)\(14\)](#)²⁹²
5. Given a wave period of [25 milliseconds](#), what is the frequency?
6. Given a frequency of [1 kilohertz](#), what is the wave period? [\(answer\)\(15\)](#)²⁹³
7. Given a wave period of [125 megahertz](#), what is the wave period?
8. Given a sine wave with a peak voltage of [100 volts](#), what is the average voltage?
[\(answer\)\(16\)](#)²⁹³
9. Given a sine wave with a peak voltage of [55 volts](#), what is the average voltage?
10. Given a sine wave with a peak voltage of [400 volts](#), what is the RMS voltage? [\(answer\)\(17\)](#)²⁹³
11. Given a sine wave with a peak voltage of [125 volts](#), what is the RMS voltage?

Related topics:

[Alternating current theory](#)²⁵⁶

[Alternating current examples](#)²⁵⁷

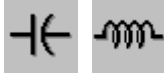
[Alternating current knowledge test](#)²⁵⁸

[Basic alternating current principles exercise](#)²⁵⁵

[Alternating current tutorial](#)²⁵⁵

Alternating Current Tutorial

Capacitors and Inductors in AC Circuits Exercise



Theory

The characteristics of capacitors and inductors in alternating current circuits, including [capacitive](#)⁸³ and [inductive reactance](#)⁸⁸ can be found in [theory](#).²⁶¹

Examples

Calculation of capacitive and inductive reactance can be found in [examples](#).²⁶¹

Knowledge test

Review questions can be found in [knowledge test](#).²⁶¹

Related topics:

[Basic alternating current principles exercise](#)²⁵⁵

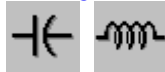
[Alternating current tutorial](#)²⁵⁵

[Tutorial topic tree](#)²⁰³

Alternating Current Tutorial

Capacitors and Inductors in AC Circuits Exercise

Theory



[Resistors](#),⁹² [capacitors](#)⁸² and [inductors](#)⁸⁹ all oppose the flow of [current](#)⁸⁴ through an [alternating current](#)⁸¹ circuit.

- Resistors have [resistance](#).⁹²
- Capacitors have [capacitive reactance](#).⁸³
- Inductors have [inductive reactance](#).⁸⁸

Capacitive reactance

When a capacitor is placed in an alternating current circuit, the [current](#)⁸⁴ flow will be reduced. The opposition caused by a capacitor is called [capacitive reactance](#).⁸³ Capacitive reactance is inversely proportional to the amount [capacitance](#)⁸³ of the capacitor and the circuit [frequency](#).⁸⁷ In other words, as the capacitance or frequency increases, the opposition to AC current flow increases. Like [resistance](#),⁹² capacitive reactance is measured in [ohms](#).⁹⁰

$$X_C = \frac{1}{2\pi fC}$$

Where: X_C = capacitive reactance in ohms
 $2\pi \cong 6.283$ (radians in 360 degrees)
 f = frequency in hertz
 C = capacitance in farads

Inductive reactance

When an inductor is placed in an alternating current circuit, the [current](#)⁸⁴ flow will be reduced. The opposition caused by an inductor is called [inductive reactance](#).⁸⁸ Inductive reactance is proportional to the amount [inductance](#)⁸⁸ of the inductor and the circuit [frequency](#).⁸⁷ In other words, as the inductance or frequency increases, the opposition to AC current flow increases. Like [resistance](#),⁹² inductive reactance is measured in [ohms](#).⁹⁰

$$X_L = 2\pi fL$$

Where: X_L = inductive reactance in ohms
 $2\pi \cong 6.283$ (radians in 360 degrees)
 f = frequency in hertz
 L = inductance in henries

Ohm's law

[Capacitive reactance](#)⁸³ or [inductive reactance](#)⁸⁸ can replace [resistance](#)⁹² in the [Ohm's law](#)⁹⁰ equation to determine AC circuit voltage and currents.

$$I = \frac{E}{R} \quad \text{or} \quad I = \frac{E}{X_C} \quad \text{or} \quad I = \frac{E}{X_L}$$

Where: I = the circuit current in [amperes](#)⁸¹
 E = the applied voltage in [volts](#)⁹⁵
 R = the circuit resistance in [ohms](#)⁹⁰
 X_C = the circuit capacitive reactance in [ohms](#)⁹⁰
 X_L = the circuit inductive reactance in [ohms](#)⁹⁰

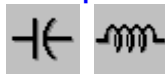
Related topics:

[Capacitors and inductors in AC circuits examples](#)²⁶¹
[Capacitors and inductors in AC circuits knowledge test](#)²⁶¹
[Capacitors and inductors in AC circuits exercise](#)²⁶¹
[Basic alternating current principles exercise](#)²⁵⁵
[Alternating current tutorial](#)²⁵⁵
[Ohm's law exercise](#)²⁰⁵
[Resistors and Simple Circuits Tutorial](#)²⁰⁵
[Voltage](#)⁹⁵
[Current](#)⁸⁴

Alternating Current Tutorial

Capacitors and Inductors in AC Circuits Exercise

Examples



Example 1

Determine the [capacitive reactance](#)⁸³ of a 2.5 μF capacitor at a [frequency](#)⁸⁷ of 800 Hz.

$$\begin{aligned} X_C &= \frac{1}{2\pi fC} \\ &= 1 / (6.283 \times 800 \times 2.5\text{e-}6) \\ &= 79.6 \text{ ohms} \end{aligned}$$

Example 2

Determine the [inductive reactance](#)⁸⁸ of a 10 mH inductor at a [frequency](#)⁸⁷ of 250 Hz.

$$\begin{aligned} X_L &= 2\pi fL \\ &= 6.283 \times 250 \times 10\text{e-}3 \\ &= 15.7 \text{ ohms} \end{aligned}$$

Example 3

Using **Ohm's law**, what is the capacitor's [current](#)⁸⁴ if the applied [voltage](#)⁹⁵ is 75 volts and the [capacitive reactance](#)⁸³ is 5 ohms.

$$\begin{aligned} I &= \frac{E}{X_c} \\ &= 75 / 5 \\ &= 15 \text{ amperes} \end{aligned}$$

Related topics:

[Capacitors and inductors in AC circuits theory](#)²⁶¹

[Capacitors and inductors in AC circuits knowledge test](#)²⁶¹

[Capacitors and inductors in AC circuits exercise](#)²⁶¹

[Basic alternating current principles exercise](#)²⁵⁵

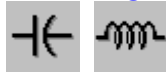
[Alternating current tutorial](#)²⁵⁵

[Ohm's law exercise](#)²⁰⁵

Alternating Current Tutorial

Capacitors and Inductors in AC Circuits Exercise

Knowledge test



1. What is the capacitive reactance of a 0.5 μF capacitor at a frequency of 60 Hz? [\(answer\)\(24\)](#)²⁹⁴
2. What is the capacitive reactance of a 2.5 μF capacitor at a frequency of 1.5 KHz?
3. What is the inductive reactance of a 5 mH inductor at a frequency of 1.5 KHz? [\(answer\)\(25\)](#)²⁹⁴
4. What is the inductive reactance of a 12.5 mH inductor at a frequency of 0.5 MHz?
5. What is the current through a 4.5 μF capacitor when the applied voltage is 2.5 mV and the frequency is 25 KHz? [\(answer\)\(26\)](#)²⁹⁴
6. What is the current through a 100 μF capacitor when the applied voltage is 0.5 V and the frequency is 5 KHz?

Related topics:

[Capacitors and inductors in AC circuits theory](#)²⁶¹

[Capacitors and inductors in AC circuits examples](#)²⁶¹

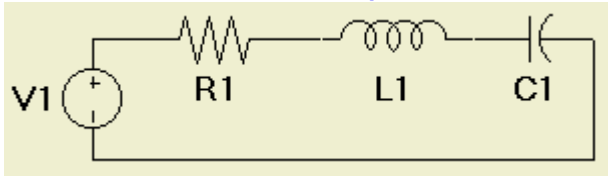
[Basic alternating current principles exercise](#)²⁵⁵

[Alternating current tutorial](#)²⁵⁵

[Ohm's law exercise](#)²⁰⁵

Alternating Current Tutorial

Series Resistor-Inductor-Capacitor (RLC) Circuits Exercise



Theory

The characteristics of series RLC circuits, including [resonant frequency](#)⁹² can be found in [theory](#).²⁶²

Examples

Resonant frequency calculations can be found in [examples](#).²⁶⁴

Demonstration

[Demonstration](#)²⁶⁴ provides instructions to construct a simple Circuit Shop circuit to show the frequency response and resonant frequency of a series RLC circuit.

Knowledge test

Review questions can be found in [knowledge test](#).²⁶⁹

Related topics:

[Capacitors and inductors in AC circuits exercise](#)²⁶¹

[Basic alternating current principles exercise](#)²⁵⁵

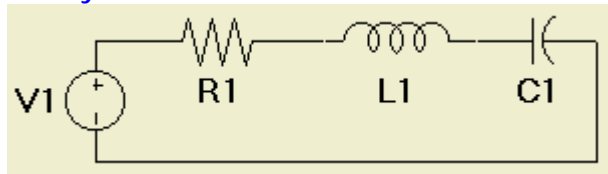
[Alternating current tutorial](#)²⁵⁵

[Tutorial topic tree](#)²⁰³

Alternating Current Tutorial

Series Resistor-Inductor-Capacitor (RLC) Circuits Exercise

Theory



In a series RLC circuit, the flow of [alternating current](#)⁸¹ is opposed by the [resistor's](#)⁹² [resistance](#),⁹² the [inductor's](#)⁸⁹ [inductive reactance](#)⁸⁸ and the [capacitor's](#)⁸² [capacitive reactance](#).⁸³

Also, the effects of [inductive reactance](#)⁸⁸ and [capacitive reactance](#)⁸³ tend to cancel each other. (This can be shown with vector addition but is beyond the goals of this tutorial.) The total [reactance](#)⁹² of a series RLC circuit can be expressed as

$$X = X_L - X_C$$

Where: X = total reactance in ohms
 X_L = inductive reactance in ohms
 X_C = capacitive reactance in ohms

In a series RLC circuit, the opposition or [impedance](#)⁸⁸ to current flow is the vector sum of the resistance and reactance and can be calculated as

$$Z = \text{SQRT}(R^2 + (X_L - X_C)^2)$$

Where: Z = impedance in ohms
 R = resistance in ohms

X_L = inductive reactance in ohms
 X_C = capacitive reactance in ohms

$$X_L = 2\pi fL$$

$$X_C = 1 / 2\pi fC$$

Where: $2\pi \cong 6.283$ (radians in 360 degrees)
 f = frequency in hertz
 L = inductance in henries
 C = capacitance in farads

Based on the above equations for X_L and X_C :

1. As frequency⁸⁷ increases, X_L , the inductive reactance⁸⁸ increases and X_C , the capacitive reactance⁸³ decreases. The circuit becomes more "inductive."
2. As frequency⁸⁷ decreases, X_L , the inductive reactance⁸⁸ decreases and X_C , the capacitive reactance⁸³ increases. The circuit becomes more "capacitive."
3. At a particular frequency⁸⁷ X_L will equal X_C . This frequency is called the circuit's resonant frequency.⁹²

Series RLC circuit resonance

At a particular frequency⁸⁷ called the circuit's resonant frequency,⁹² X_L will equal X_C and will cancel each other out. At this frequency, the only opposition to current flow will be the circuit's resistance.⁹² By using the fact that X_L equals X_C at the resonant frequency, a resonant frequency equation in terms of the circuit's inductance⁸⁸ and capacitance⁸³ can be developed as follows

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Step 1: } 2\pi fL &= 1 / (2\pi fC) \\ \text{2: } f \times f &= 1 / (2\pi \times 2\pi \times L \times C) \\ \text{3: } f^2 &= 1 / ((2\pi)^2 \times L \times C) \\ \text{4: } \text{SQRT}(f^2) &= \text{SQRT}(1) / \text{SQRT}((2\pi)^2 \times L \times C) \\ \text{5: } f &= 1 / (2\pi \times \text{SQRT}(LC)) \end{aligned}$$

Thus, a series RLC circuit's resonant frequency can be calculated using the following formula

$$f_r = \frac{1}{2\pi \times \text{SQRT}(LC)}$$

Where: f_r = resonant frequency in hertz
 $2\pi \cong 6.283$ (radians in 360 degrees)
 L = inductance in henries
 C = capacitance in farads

A series RLC circuit's resonant frequency is inversely proportional to the amount capacitance⁸³ or inductance⁸⁸ in the circuit. In other words, as the capacitance or inductance increases, the resonant frequency will decrease.

The resonant frequency equation may be rearranged to calculate the required inductance⁸⁸ or capacitance⁸³ to cause the circuit to resonate at a desired frequency.⁸⁷

$$L = \frac{1}{(2\pi)^2 \times f^2 \times C}$$

$$C = \frac{1}{(2\pi)^2 \times f^2 \times L}$$

$$(2\pi)^2 \times f^2 \times L$$

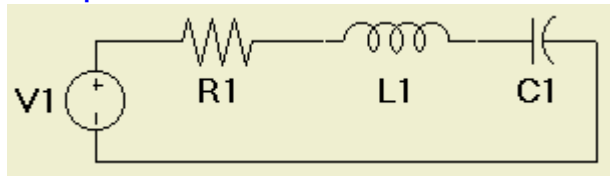
Where: f = resonant frequency in hertz
 $(2\pi)^2 \cong 39.48$
 L = inductance in henries
 C = capacitance in farads

Related topics:

[Series resistor-inductor-capacitor \(RLC\) circuits examples](#)²⁶⁴
[Series resistor-inductor-capacitor \(RLC\) circuits knowledge test](#)²⁶⁹
[Series resistor-inductor-capacitor \(RLC\) circuits exercise](#)²⁶²
[Capacitors and inductors in AC circuits exercise](#)²⁶¹
[Basic alternating current principles exercise](#)²⁵⁵
[Alternating current tutorial](#)²⁵⁵

Alternating Current Tutorial

Series Resistor-Inductor-Capacitor (RLC) Circuits Exercise Examples



Example 1

Determine the [resonant frequency](#)⁹² of a 4 mH inductor and a 2.5 μ F capacitor.

$$f_r = \frac{1}{2\pi \times \text{SQRT}(LC)}$$

$$= 1 / (2\pi \times \text{SQRT}(4\text{e-}3 \times 2.5\text{e-}6))$$

$$= 1.59\text{e}3 \text{ Hz}$$

$$= 1.59 \text{ kHz}$$

Example 2

Determine the [capacitance](#)⁸³ required to be in series with a 0.5 mH inductor to achieve a [resonant frequency](#)⁹² of 500 kHz.

$$C = \frac{1}{(2\pi)^2 \times f^2 \times L}$$

$$= 1 / ((2\pi)^2 \times 500\text{e}3^2 \times 0.5\text{e-}3)$$

$$= 2.026\text{e-}10 \text{ F}$$

$$= 202.6 \text{ pF}$$

Related topics:

[Series resistor-inductor-capacitor \(RLC\) circuits theory](#)²⁶²
[Series resistor-inductor-capacitor \(RLC\) circuits knowledge test](#)²⁶⁹
[Series resistor-inductor-capacitor \(RLC\) circuits exercise](#)²⁶²
[Capacitors and inductors in AC circuits exercise](#)²⁶¹
[Basic alternating current principles exercise](#)²⁵⁵
[Alternating current tutorial](#)²⁵⁵

Alternating Current Tutorial

Series Resistor-Inductor-Capacitor (RLC) Circuits Exercise

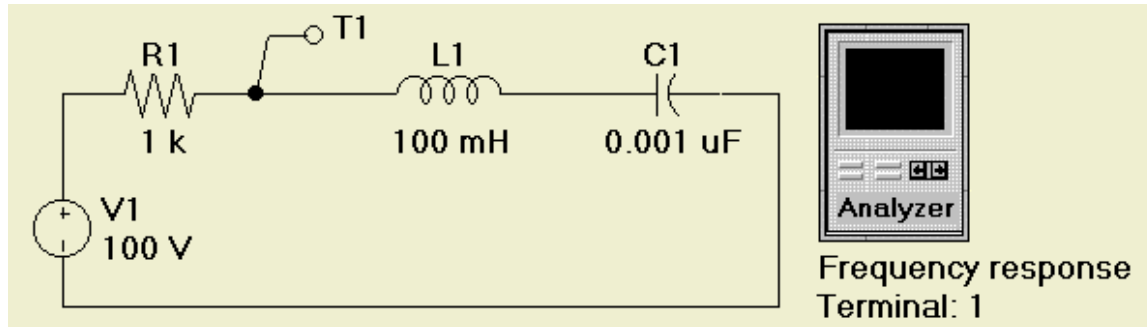
Demonstration Circuit

This circuit demonstrates [resonant frequency](#)⁹² in a series resistor-inductor-capacitor (RLC) circuit.

Step 1 - construct the circuit

Use Circuit Shop tools to construct the following circuit. Set the [circuit analyzer](#)³⁰ parameters to the following values:

- analyzer type: [Frequency response](#)
- terminal id: 1
- frequency min, max, points/decade: 1e3, 1e5, 25
- plot type: [Magnitude](#)



See [detailed instructions](#)²⁶⁶ if you are unfamiliar with Circuit Shop.

Step 2 - analyse the circuit



Use the [Tool | Analyse](#)⁴⁶ menu command or the [toolbar](#)³⁷ icon [Analyze](#) to analyse the circuit. [Analysing a circuit](#)¹⁹ provides additional details.

If the circuit has been correctly constructed and the circuit analyzer correctly linked to the terminal, after the analyse command has been executed, a [frequency response](#)²⁷ graph window will be generated. The graph will show a peak at the [resonant frequency](#)⁹². An RLC circuit's resonant frequency was introduced in the [theory](#)²⁶² topic for this exercise. For this circuit the resonant frequency can be calculated as

$$\begin{aligned} f_r &= \frac{1}{2\pi \times \text{SQRT}(LC)} \\ &= 1 / (2\pi \times \text{SQRT}(100\text{e-}3 \times 0.001\text{e-}6)) \\ &= 1.59\text{e}4 \text{ Hz} \\ &= 15.9 \text{ kHz} \end{aligned}$$

As expected, the peak on the graph occurs between 10 and 20 kHz.

Step 3 - increase the capacitance to see the effect on resonant frequency




1. Using the mouse, click the pointer icon on the [toolbar](#)³⁷ or the [analog device toolkit](#)⁵².
2. Move the mouse onto the diagram over the [capacitor](#)⁸².
3. Double click the mouse on the capacitor to open the [Edit Device dialog box](#)⁶⁴. [Modifying device values](#)¹⁶ provides additional details.

- In the value field, enter **0.01e-6** as the capacitor's new value. Using this new value, the new resonant frequency can be calculated as

$$\begin{aligned}
 f_r &= \frac{1}{2\pi \times \text{SQRT}(LC)} \\
 &= 1 / (2\pi \times \text{SQRT}(100\text{e-}3 \times 0.01\text{e-}6)) \\
 &= 5.03\text{e}3 \text{ Hz} \\
 &= 5.03 \text{ kHz}
 \end{aligned}$$



- Use the [Tool|Analyze](#)⁴⁶ menu command or the [toolbar](#)³⁷ icon  to re-analyse the circuit.

After the analyse command has been executed, the [frequency response](#)²⁷ graph window will be updated. As expected, the graph will show a new [resonant frequency](#)⁹² peak at 5.03 KHz.

As stated in the [theory](#)²⁶² topic, if a circuit's [capacitance](#)⁸³ or [inductance](#)⁸⁸ is increased, the resonant frequency will decrease.

Related topics:

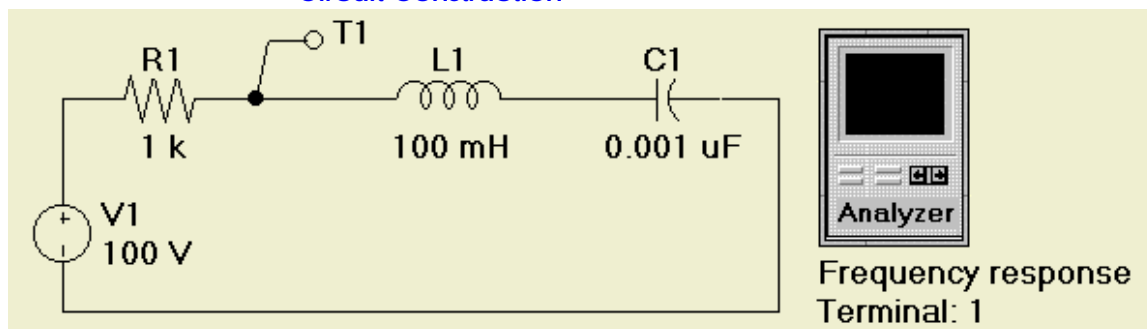
[Series resistor-inductor-capacitor \(RLC\) circuits theory](#)²⁶²
[Series resistor-inductor-capacitor \(RLC\) circuits examples](#)²⁶⁴
[Series resistor-inductor-capacitor \(RLC\) circuits knowledge test](#)²⁶⁹
[Series resistor-inductor-capacitor \(RLC\) circuits exercise](#)²⁶²
[Capacitors and inductors in AC circuits exercise](#)²⁶¹
[Basic alternating current principles exercise](#)²⁵⁵
[Alternating current tutorial](#)²⁵⁵

Alternating Current Tutorial

Series Resistor-Inductor-Capacitor (RLC) Circuits Exercise

Demonstration Circuit


Circuit Construction



This topic provides detailed instructions to construct the series resistor-inductor-capacitor (RLC) demonstration circuit shown in the title bar above.

Open a diagram window and display the analog device toolkit:






- Use the [File|New](#)³⁹ menu command or the [toolbar](#)³⁷ icon  to open a new diagram window. [Creating a new diagram window](#)¹⁵ provides additional details.
- Ensure the [analog device toolkit](#)⁵² is visible. If the toolkit is not visible, use the [View|Analog](#)





[Device Toolkit](#)⁴⁹ menu command or the toolbar icon  to display it.

Add a resistor, an inductor and a capacitor to the diagram:



1. Using the mouse, click the [resistor](#)⁹² icon  on the [analog device toolkit](#).⁵²
2. Move the mouse onto the diagram to approximately the center of the diagram window.
3. Click the mouse to place the resistor on the diagram. [Adding devices](#)¹² provides additional details.
4. Repeat steps (1), (2) and (3) but instead select the [inductor](#)⁸⁹ icon  on the [analog device toolkit](#).⁵²
5. Repeat steps (1), (2) and (3) but instead select the [capacitor](#)⁸² icon  on the [analog device toolkit](#).⁵²

Add an AC voltage source to the diagram:


1. Using the mouse, click the [source toolkit](#)⁵⁸ icon  on the [analog device toolkit](#).⁵²
2. Using the mouse, click the [AC voltage source](#)⁸¹ icon  on the [source toolkit](#).⁵⁸
3. Move the mouse onto the diagram to where the [AC voltage source](#)⁸¹ is to be located. See circuit layout in title bar.
4. Click the mouse to place the AC voltage source on the diagram.

Add a terminal to the diagram:


Note: the terminal is used as a connection point for the circuit analyzer which will be added below.

1. Using the mouse, click the [terminal & plug toolkit](#)⁵⁷ icon  on the [analog device toolkit](#).⁵²
2. Using the mouse, click the [terminal](#)⁹³ icon  on the [terminal & plug toolkit](#).⁵⁷
3. Move the mouse onto the diagram to where the [terminal](#)⁹³ is to be located. See circuit layout in title bar.
4. Click the mouse to place the terminal on the diagram.

Add a connector to the diagram:

1. Using the mouse, choose the connector icon  on the [toolbar](#)³⁷ or the [analog device toolkit](#).⁵²
2. Move the mouse onto the diagram to where the connector is to be located. See circuit layout in title bar.
3. Click the mouse to place the connector on the diagram.

Layout the circuit and rotate the devices:

1. Using the mouse, click the pointer icon  on the [toolbar](#)³⁷ or the [analog device toolkit](#).⁵²
2. If necessary, move the diagram objects to locations approximately the same as the circuit layout in title bar. To move a device, press the left mouse button over a device and drag it to the new location. [Moving an object](#)¹⁷ provides additional details.
3. By default, Circuit Shop places most objects on a diagram in a horizontal orientation. To rotate the voltage source, press the left mouse button over one of the source's terminals and drag it to a vertical orientation. [Rotating an object](#)¹⁸ provides additional details.

Add wires to connect the devices:



1. Using the mouse, click the wire icon on the [toolbar](#)³⁷ or the [analog device toolkit](#).⁵²
2. Move the mouse onto the diagram over the top source terminal.
3. Press the left mouse button and drag the wire to the left resistor terminal. [Connecting devices](#)¹⁴ provides additional details.
4. Repeat steps (2) and (3) to connect the devices as shown in the circuit layout in title bar.

Add a [vertex](#)⁹⁵ to source-to-capacitor wire:



1. Using the mouse, choose the pointer icon on the [toolbar](#)³⁷ or the [analog device toolkit](#).⁵²
2. Move the mouse onto the diagram over the wire portion where the vertex is to be added.
3. Press the left mouse button and drag the wire or line object to the desired vertex location.
4. Release the mouse button. [Adding a vertex](#)¹² provides additional details.

At this point the circuit connections are complete and the circuit should look as shown in the title bar above.

Add ids and values to the devices:



1. Using the mouse, click the pointer icon on the [toolbar](#)³⁷ or the [analog device toolkit](#).⁵²
2. Move the mouse onto the diagram over the [resistor](#).⁹²
3. Double click the mouse on the resistor to open the [Edit Device dialog box](#).⁶⁴ [Modifying device values](#)¹⁶ provides additional details.
4. Enter 1 as the resistor id and 1e3 ohms⁹⁰ as its value.
5. Repeat step (3) on the [inductor](#).⁸⁹ and enter 1 as the inductor id and 100e-3 henries⁸⁸ as its value.
6. Repeat step (3) on the [capacitor](#).⁸² and enter 1 as the capacitor id and 0.001e-6 farads⁸⁶ as its value.
7. Repeat step (3) on the [terminal](#).⁹³ and enter 1 as the terminal id.

Note: the terminal is used as a connection point for the circuit analyzer which will be added below. The terminal id is used to link the terminal to the circuit analyzer.

8. Repeat step (3) on the [AC voltage source](#).⁸¹ and enter 1 as the source id and 100 volts⁹⁵ as its value.
9. Because of the vertical orientation of the [AC voltage source](#),⁸¹ the displayed id and value, called annotations, need to be moved. See the circuit layout in title bar above for suggested annotation locations. To move an annotation, press the left mouse button over the annotation and drag it to the new location. [Moving an object](#)¹⁷ provides additional details.

At this point the circuit is complete. The devices have been added, wires have been added to connect the devices, and their ids and values have been defined.


Add a circuit analyzer to the diagram:



1. Using the mouse, click the [circuit analyzer](#)³⁰ icon on the [analog device toolkit](#).⁵²

2. Move the mouse onto the diagram to a position just to the right of the circuit as shown in the title bar above.
3. Click the mouse to place the circuit analyzer on the diagram. [Adding an object](#)¹² provides additional details.

Set circuit analyzer parameters:

1. Using the mouse, click the pointer icon  on the [toolbar](#)³⁷ or the [analog device toolkit](#).⁵²
2. Move the mouse onto the diagram over the [circuit analyzer](#).³⁰
3. Double click the mouse on the analyzer to open the [Edit Analyzer dialog box](#).⁶² [Modifying object values](#)¹⁶ provides additional details.
4. Set the circuit analyzer parameters to the following values:
 - analyzer type: [Frequency response](#)
 - terminal id: [1](#)
 - frequency min, max, points/decade: [1e3, 1e5, 25](#)
 - plot type: [Magnitude](#)

At this point the circuit construction is complete. Return to [series RLC circuits demonstration](#)²⁶⁴ to complete the exercise.

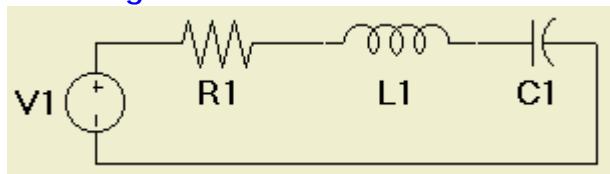
Related topics:

[Series resistor-inductor-capacitor \(RLC\) circuits exercise](#)²⁶²
[Alternating current tutorial](#)²⁵⁵
[Creating and editing diagrams](#)¹¹
[Menu commands](#)³⁷
[Toolbar commands](#)³⁷
[Device and drawing toolkits](#)⁵¹
[Dialog boxes](#)⁶²

Alternating Current Tutorial

Series Resistor-Inductor-Capacitor (RLC) Circuits Exercise

Knowledge test



1. What is the [resonant frequency](#)⁹² of a [0.25 mH](#) inductor and a [100 μF](#) capacitor? [\(answer\)\(27\)](#)²⁹⁵
2. What is the [resonant frequency](#)⁹² of a [0.05 mH](#) inductor and a [50 μF](#) capacitor?
3. What is the [capacitance](#)⁸³ required to be in series with a [750 mH](#) inductor to achieve a [resonant frequency](#)⁹² of [50 kHz](#). [\(answer\)\(28\)](#)²⁹⁵
4. What is the [inductance](#)⁸⁸ required to be in series with a [1 μF](#) capacitor to achieve a [resonant frequency](#)⁹² of [333 Hz](#).

Related topics:

[Series resistor-inductor-capacitor \(RLC\) circuits theory](#)²⁶²
[Series resistor-inductor-capacitor \(RLC\) circuits examples](#)²⁶⁴
[Series resistor-inductor-capacitor \(RLC\) circuits exercise](#)²⁶²
[Capacitors and inductors in AC circuits exercise](#)²⁶¹
[Basic alternating current principles exercise](#)²⁵⁵
[Alternating current tutorial](#)²⁵⁵

Semiconductor Tutorial

This tutorial covers the following topics:

- How [diodes](#)⁸⁵ operate in a circuit.
- The use of diodes in [half-wave rectifiers](#)⁸⁷ and [full-wave rectifiers](#)⁸⁷.
- How [transistors](#)⁹⁴ operate in a circuit.
- Biasing a transistor.
- Different types of transistor circuits.

Exercises:

[Diode exercise](#)²⁷⁰

[Transistor exercise](#)²⁷⁴

Related topics:

[General tutorial introduction and instructions](#)²⁰¹

[Tutorial topic tree](#)²⁰³

Semiconductor Tutorial



Diode Exercise

Theory

Basic [diode](#)⁸⁵ characteristics and operation can be found in [theory](#)²⁷⁰.

Examples

Two simple diode [rectification](#)⁹² circuits, a [half-wave rectifier](#)⁸⁷ and a [full-wave rectifier](#)⁸⁷ can be found in [examples](#)²⁷¹.

Knowledge test

Review questions can be found in [knowledge test](#)²⁷³.

Related topics:

[Semiconductor tutorial](#)²⁷⁰

[Tutorial topic tree](#)²⁰³

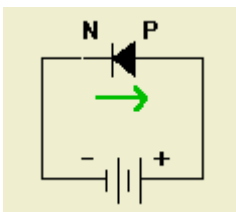
Semiconductor Tutorial



Diode Exercise

Theory

A [diode](#)⁸⁵ is a two terminal [semiconductor](#)⁹³ device which acts like a one-way gate in a circuit. A diode allows [current](#)⁸⁴ to easily flow in one direction and not the other. In other words, a diode has a very low [resistance](#)⁹² in one direction and a very high resistance in the other.



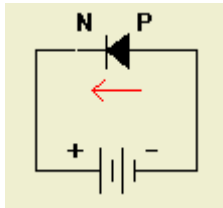
Forward bias turns a diode on

The above circuit shows a [forward bias](#) diode. I.e. the [negative](#) (-) battery terminal is connected to the [N](#) side of the diode and the [positive](#) (+) battery terminal is connected to the [P](#) side of the diode.

In a forward bias configuration, the diode will present a [low resistance](#)⁹² to the circuit and [current](#)⁸⁴ will easily flow.

Note: **P** and **N** stand for semiconductor crystal types which have an excess of **p**ositive and **n**egative charge respectively. Silicon P-N junction diodes are the most common diode device type. (Further semiconductor crystal and charge theory is very detailed and is beyond the goals of this tutorial.)

For a silicon P-N junction diode, when the forward bias voltage reaches **+0.7** volts and above, the diode turns on and presents a very low resistance to the circuit and current begins to flow. The **+0.7** value is called the [threshold voltage](#).



Reverse bias turns a diode off

The above circuit shows a [reverse bias](#) diode. I.e. the **positive (+)** battery terminal is connected to the **N** side of the diode and the **negative (-)** battery terminal is connected to the **P** side of the diode. In a reverse bias configuration, the diode will present a [very high resistance](#)⁹² to the circuit and [current](#)⁸⁴ will not easily flow.

A diode can only withstand a certain amount of reverse voltage before the diode one-way gate effect fails and current begins to flow in the reverse direction. For a silicon P-N junction diode, this normally occurs at -20 to -25 volts. The reverse bias point where the diode fails is normally called the [breakdown voltage](#).

Related topics:

[Diode examples](#)²⁷¹

[Diode knowledge test](#)²⁷³

[Diode exercise](#)²⁷⁰

[Semiconductor tutorial](#)²⁷⁰

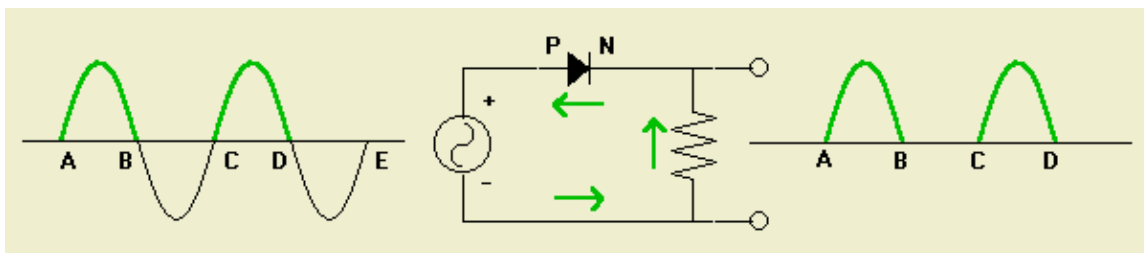
Semiconductor Tutorial



Diode Exercise Examples

Example 1 - Half-wave rectifier

[Diodes](#)⁸⁵ can be used to convert [alternating current \(AC\)](#)⁸¹ into [direct current \(DC\)](#).⁸⁶ This conversion is called [rectification](#).⁹²



Half-wave

rectification

The above circuit is called a half-wave rectifier. The input source provides an [alternating current \(AC\)](#)⁸¹ [voltage](#).⁹⁵

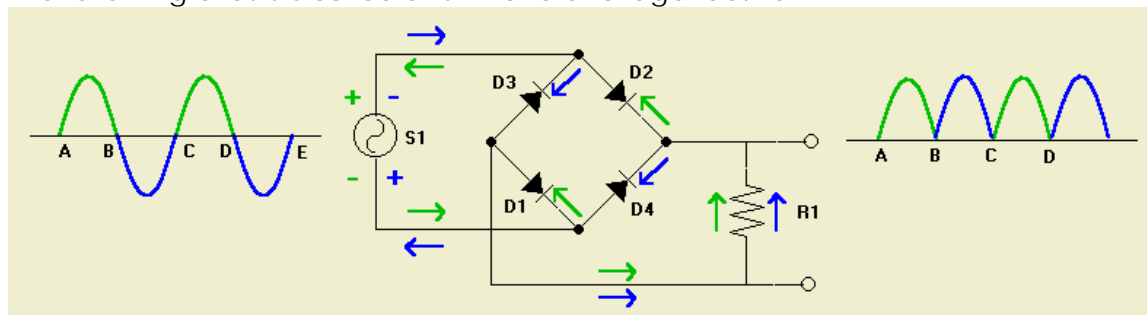
When the voltage source is transitioning through the positive half of the cycle (points A to B and C to D), the diode is forward biased, i.e. a **positive (+)** voltage is applied to the **P** side of the diode. When the diode is forward biased, the diode's **resistance⁹²** is low and current will easily flow.

When the voltage source is transitioning through the negative half of the cycle (points B to C and D to E), the diode is reverse biased, i.e. a **negative (-)** voltage is applied to the **P** side of the diode. When the diode is reverse biased, the diode's **resistance⁹²** is very high and no current will flow.

This results in a pulsating **direct current (DC)⁸⁶** wave at the output terminal since the diode one-way gate action only allows 1/2 of the input wave through. Because only 1/2 of the input wave is used, this circuit is called a half-wave rectifier.

Example 2 - Full-wave rectifier

The following circuit is called a full-wave or bridge rectifier.



The input source provides an **alternating current (AC)⁸¹ voltage⁹⁵**.

When the voltage source is transitioning through the positive half of the cycle (points A to B and C to D), diodes **D1** and **D2** are forward biased, i.e. a **negative (-)** voltage is applied to the **N** side of **D1** and a **positive (+)** voltage is applied to the **P** side of **D2**. Since **D1** and **D2** are forward biased, their **resistance⁹²** is low and current will easily flow through their circuit branches.

Using the same reasoning, diodes **D3** and **D4** are negative biased and their **resistance⁹²** is high and very little current will flow through their circuit branches.

In the above circuit, the current path while transitioning through the positive half of the cycle is shown by the green arrows.

When the voltage source is transitioning through the negative half of the cycle (points B to C and D to E), the other half of the bridge circuit becomes active. Diodes **D3** and **D4** become forward biased, i.e. a **negative (-)** voltage is applied to the **N** side of **D3** and a **positive (+)** voltage is applied to the **P** side of **D4**. Since **D3** and **D4** are forward biased, their **resistance⁹²** is low and current will easily flow through their circuit branches.

Using the same reasoning, diodes **D1** and **D2** become negative biased and their **resistance⁹²** is high and very little current will flow through their circuit branches.

In the above circuit, the current path while transitioning through the negative half of the cycle is shown by the blue arrows.

In summary, during the positive half of the cycle,

diodes **D1** and **D2** turn on and

diodes **D3** and **D4** turn off.

During the negative half of the cycle, the bridge circuit reverses, i.e.

diodes **D1** and **D2** turn off and

diodes **D3** and **D4** turn on.

This results in a pulsating **direct current (DC)⁸⁶** wave at the output terminal. Half of the bridge allows the positive portion of the input wave through, and the other half of the bridge allows the negative portion of the input wave through. Because both the positive and negative portions of the input wave are passed through, this circuit is called a full-wave rectifier.

Related topics:

[Diode theory](#)²⁷⁰

[Diode exercise](#)²⁷⁰

[Diode knowledge test](#)²⁷³

[Semiconductor tutorial](#)²⁷⁰

Semiconductor Tutorial



Diode Exercise Knowledge Test

1. A [diode](#)⁸⁵ is a two terminal device which acts like a _____ in a circuit. A diode allows [current](#)⁸⁴ to easily flow in one direction and not the other. In other words, a diode has a very _____ [resistance](#)⁹² in one direction and a very _____ resistance in the other. [\(answer\)\(34\)](#)²⁹⁶
2. Forward bias turns a diode _____ and a reverse bias turns a diode _____.
3. For a silicon P-N junction diode, when the forward bias voltage reaches +0.7 volts and above, the diode turns on and presents a very low resistance to the circuit and current begins to flow. The +0.7 value is called the _____. [\(answer\)\(35\)](#)²⁹⁶
4. A diode can only withstand a certain amount of reverse voltage before the diode one-way gate effect fails and current begins to flow in the reverse direction. For a silicon P-N junction diode, this normally occurs at -20 to -25 volts. The reverse bias point where the diode fails is normally called the _____.
5. Diodes can be used to convert [alternating current \(AC\)](#)⁸¹ into [direct current \(DC\)](#)⁸⁶. This conversion is called _____. [\(answer\)\(36\)](#)²⁹⁶

Related topics:

[Diode theory](#)²⁷⁰

[Diode examples](#)²⁷¹

[Diode exercise](#)²⁷⁰

[Semiconductor tutorial](#)²⁷⁰

Semiconductor Tutorial



Transistor Exercise

Theory

Basic [transistor](#)⁹⁴ characteristics and operation can be found in [theory](#).²⁷⁴

Examples

Calculation of fixed and voltage divider bias resistor values can be found in [examples](#).²⁷⁶

Knowledge test

Review questions can be found in [knowledge test](#).²⁸⁰

Related topics:

[Semiconductor tutorial](#)²⁷⁰

[Tutorial topic tree](#)²⁰³

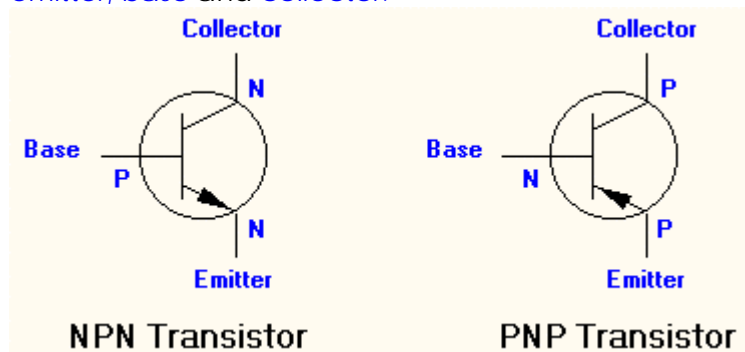
Semiconductor Tutorial



Transistor Exercise

Theory

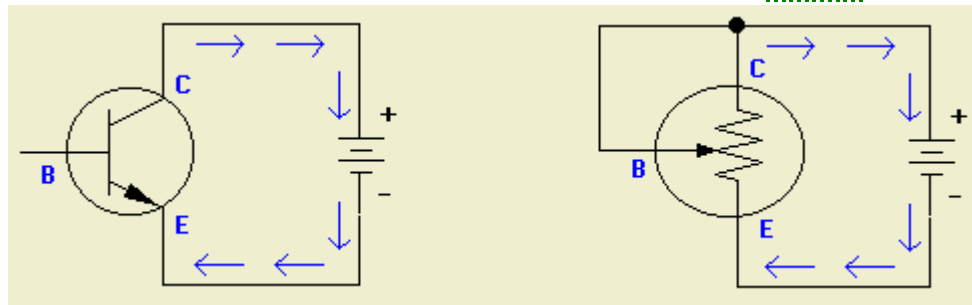
A [transistor](#)⁹⁴ is a three terminal device made of [semiconductor](#)⁹³ material. The terminals are named: emitter, base and collector.



There are two types of transistors, **NPN** and **PNP**. **P** and **N** stand for semiconductor crystal types which have an excess of positive and negative charge respectively. (Further semiconductor crystal and charge theory is very detailed and is beyond the goals of this tutorial. Most students will find further study of semiconductor theory to be interesting and rewarding, it is highly recommended!)

The base current controls the output collector current

A transistor can be considered to be a form of variable [resistor](#).⁹²

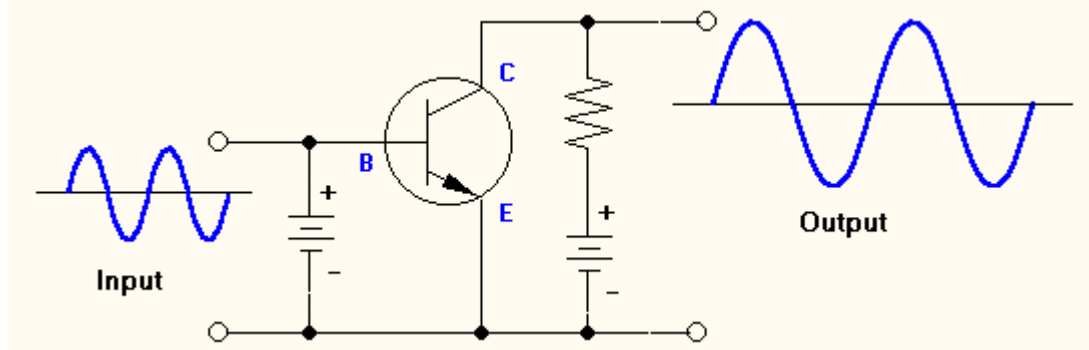


In the right hand circuit above, the **base** acts like the moveable contact of a variable resistor. The base **current**⁸⁴ controls the transistor's emitter-to-collector **resistance**⁹² and thus the emitter-to-collector circuit current.

- When the base current is low, the transistor's emitter-to-collector resistance is high and very little current will flow. I.e. when the base current is turned off, the transistor's output current will be low.
- When the base current is high, the transistor's emitter-to-collector resistance is low and a current will flow in the circuit. I.e. when the base current is turned on, the transistor's output current will flow.

A transistor can amplify an input signal

In the following circuit, the base current is changed by applying a varying input signal.



The changing base current causes the transistor's emitter-to-collector resistance to vary which results in a changing emitter-to-collector circuit current. The changing emitter-to-collector current causes a varying output **voltage**.⁹⁵ A small change in the base current will cause a large change in the transistor's emitter-to-collector current. In other words, the input signal is **amplified** by the transistor circuit.

Current gain

As stated above, a small change in the base current will cause a large change in the transistor's emitter-to-collector current. The ratio of the transistor's emitter-to-collector current to the base current is called the transistor's current gain **h_{FE}**. In equation form

$$h_{FE} = \frac{I_C}{I_B}$$

where

h_{FE} = transistor current gain
I_C = collector current (**amperes**)⁸¹
I_B = base current (**amperes**)⁸¹

Typical transistor **h_{FE}** values range from 50 to 200. This means the transistor's output current, **I_C** will be 50 to 200 times greater than the input current **I_B**.

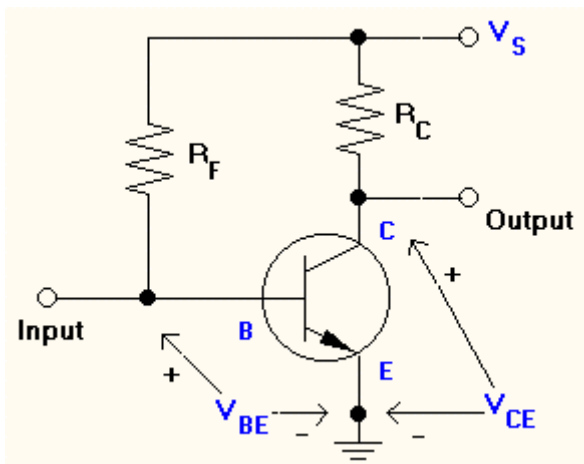
Note, because of the high current gains for most transistors, the base current is much lower than the collector current.

Since **I_C = I_E + I_B** and **I_B** is negligible, the emitter current, **I_E** is approximately equal to the collector current, **I_C**. This fact is sometimes useful when analyzing transistor circuits.

Transistor biasing

To operate, a transistor's emitter-to-base terminals must be **forward biased**.

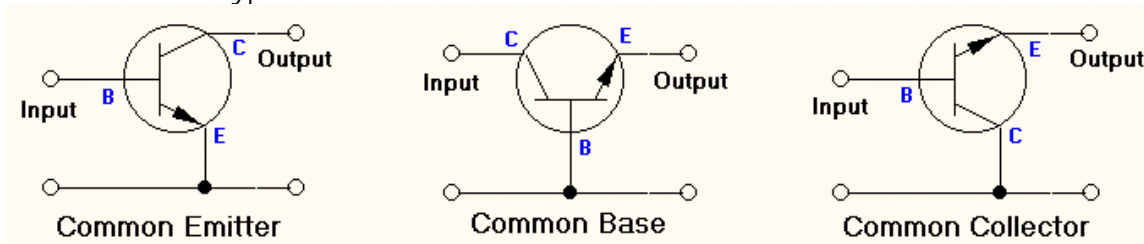
- For an **NPN** transistor, the base voltage must be more positive than the emitter voltage.
- For a **PNP** transistor, the base voltage must be more negative than the emitter voltage.



In the above **NPN** transistor circuit, the emitter is grounded and thus at 0 volts. Resistor R_F must be selected to forward bias the base with respect to the emitter, i.e. the emitter-to-base voltage V_{BE} must be greater than or equal to +0.7 volts. The +0.7 value is called the **threshold voltage** and is also discussed in [diode theory](#).²⁷⁰ How to calculate bias resistor values can be found in [examples](#).²⁷⁶

Transistor circuit types

There are three types of transistor circuits.



The three circuit types have different amplification, input/output **impedance**.⁸⁸ and **phase**.⁹¹ characteristics.

	Common Emitter =====	Common Base =====	Common Collector =====
Amplification	High	Medium	Low (< 1)
Input impedance	Medium	Low	High
Output impedance	Medium	High	Low
Phase shift	180 deg.	None	None

Generally, **Common Emitter** circuits are used in amplifier applications. **Common Base** and **Common Collector** circuits are used to match impedances with input/output devices such as microphones and speakers, and between different circuits.

Related topics:

[Transistor examples](#)²⁷⁶
[Transistor knowledge test](#)²⁸⁰
[Transistor exercise](#)²⁷⁴
[Semiconductor tutorial](#)²⁷⁰

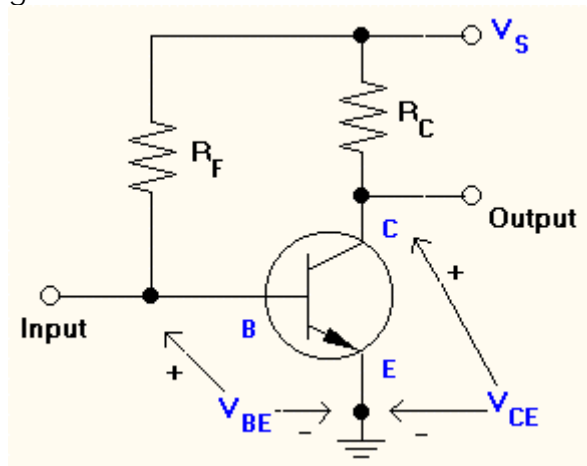
Semiconductor Tutorial



Transistor Exercise
Examples

Example 1 - Fixed bias

In the following circuit, a "fixed bias" voltage is applied via resistor R_F to the base to ensure the emitter-to-base transistor terminals are **forward biased**, i.e. the base voltage is at least **+0.7 volts** greater than the emitter.



Given

$$\begin{aligned} V_S &= 9.0 \text{ volts} \\ R_C &= 2500 \text{ ohms} \\ V_{CE} &= 1.5 \text{ volts (desired operating point)} \\ h_{FE} &= 100 \text{ (common emitter current gain)} \end{aligned}$$

Determine the required bias resistor, R_F value.

1. First determine the **voltage**⁹⁵ across the collector resistor R_C . V_{RC} is equal to the source voltage, V_S , minus the desired operating point voltage, V_{CE} .

$$\begin{aligned} V_{RC} &= V_S - V_{CE} \\ &= 9.0 - 1.5 \\ &= 7.5 \text{ volts.} \end{aligned}$$

2. Using **Ohm's law**⁹⁰ determine the **current**⁸⁴ through R_C . This is the same as the collector current, I_C .

$$\begin{aligned} I_C &= V_{RC} / R_C \\ &= 7.5 / 2500 \\ &= 3.0 \text{ mA.} \end{aligned}$$

3. Using the collector current, I_C determined in step (2) and the transistor's current gain, h_{FE} , the required base **current**⁸⁴ I_B can be determined.

$$h_{FE} = \frac{I_C}{I_B}$$

or

$$\begin{aligned} I_B &= I_C / h_{FE} \\ &= 3.0 \text{ ma} / 100 \\ &= 0.03 \text{ ma} \end{aligned}$$

4. Next, determine the required **voltage**⁹⁵ across R_F . This is the transistor's base terminal bias voltage.

To operate, the transistor must be forward biased, i.e. the emitter-to-base voltage, V_{BE} must be greater than or equal to **+0.7 volts**. (The **+0.7** value is called the **threshold voltage** and is also discussed in **diode theory**.²⁷⁰)

For this example, we will select V_{BE} to be **+0.725 volts**.

V_{RF} is equal to the source voltage, V_S minus the selected base terminal voltage, V_{BE} .

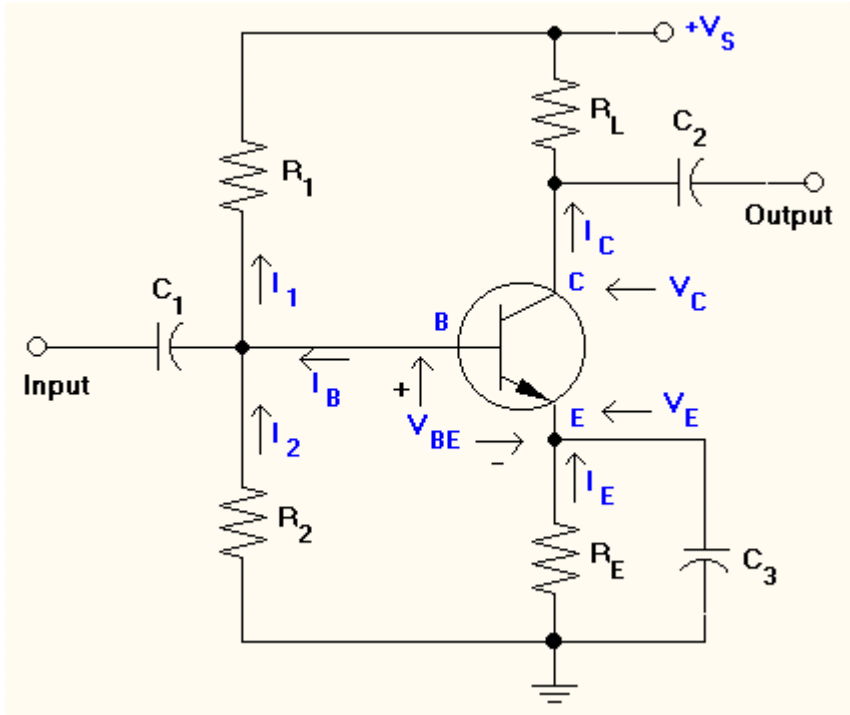
$$\begin{aligned} V_{RF} &= V_S - V_{BE} \\ &= 9.0 - 0.725 \\ &= 8.275 \text{ volts.} \end{aligned}$$

5. Finally, [Ohm's law](#)⁹⁰ can be used to determine [Rf's resistance](#)⁹² value.

$$\begin{aligned}
 R_F &= \frac{V_{RF}}{I_B} \\
 &= 8.275 \text{ volts} / 0.03 \text{ ma} \\
 &= 8.275 \text{ volts} / 0.03\text{e-}3 \text{ amps} \\
 &= 276\text{e}3 \text{ ohms} \\
 &= 276 \text{ kohms}
 \end{aligned}$$

Example 2 - Voltage divider bias

In the following circuit, a voltage divider consisting of R_1 and R_2 is used to ensure the emitter-to-base transistor terminals are [forward biased](#), i.e. the base voltage is at least $+0.7$ volts greater than the emitter.



Given

$$\begin{aligned}
 V_S &= 9.0 \text{ volts} \\
 V_C &= 4.5 \text{ volts} \quad (\text{desired operating point}) \\
 I_C &= 1.0 \text{ milliamp} \quad (\text{desired operating point}) \\
 V_E &= 0.5 \text{ volts} \\
 h_{FE} &= 100 \quad (\text{common emitter current gain})
 \end{aligned}$$

Determine the values for R_L , R_E , R_1 and R_2 to ensure the base is forward biased.

- First determine the [voltage](#)⁹⁵ across R_L . V_{RL} is equal to the source voltage, V_S , minus the desired operating point voltage, V_C .

$$\begin{aligned}
 V_{RL} &= V_S - V_C \\
 &= 9.0 - 4.5 \\
 &= 4.5 \text{ volts.}
 \end{aligned}$$

- Using V_{RL} obtained in step (1) and the desired operating point collector current, I_C , use [Ohm's law](#)⁹⁰ to determine [Rl's resistance](#)⁹² value.

$$\begin{aligned}
 R_L &= V_{RL} / I_C \\
 &= 4.5 \text{ volts} / 1.0 \text{ ma} \\
 &= 4.5 / 1.0\text{e-}3 \\
 &= 4500 \text{ ohms}
 \end{aligned}$$

3. Next, determine the emitter [resistance](#)⁹² value, R_E .
 Using the fact that for a transistor, the emitter current, I_E is approximately equal to the collector current, I_C , gives $I_E = 1.0 \text{ ma}$.
 Using the given emitter voltage, V_E and the estimated emitter current, I_E , use [Ohm's law](#)⁹⁰ to determine R_E 's [resistance](#)⁹² value.

$$R_E = V_E / I_E$$

$$= 0.5 \text{ volts} / 1.0 \text{ ma}$$

$$= 0.5 / 1.0\text{e-}3$$

$$= 500 \text{ ohms}$$
4. Using the transistor's current gain, h_{FE} and the given collector current, I_C , the base [current](#),⁸⁴ I_B can be determined.

$$h_{FE} = \frac{I_C}{I_B}$$
 or

$$I_B = I_C / h_{FE}$$

$$= 1.0 \text{ ma} / 100$$

$$= 0.01 \text{ ma}$$
5. Next, determine the [current](#)⁸⁴ through the voltage divider resistors R_1 and R_2 .
 In general, to ensure the circuit is stable, the current through the voltage divider should be at least 10 times greater than the base current. The larger the voltage divider current, the more stable the circuit will be, this is traded against the continuous [power](#)⁹¹ consumption of the voltage divider.
 For this example, we will select resistor R_2 's current, $I_2 = 0.25 \text{ ma}$.

 Resistor R_1 's current, I_1 can be calculated as follows.

$$I_1 = I_2 + I_B$$

$$= 0.25 + 0.01$$

$$= 0.26 \text{ ma}$$
6. Next, calculate the [voltage](#)⁹⁵ across resistor R_2 .
 To operate, the transistor must be forward biased, i.e. the emitter-to-base voltage V_{BE} must be greater than or equal to +0.7 volts. (The +0.7 value is called the [threshold voltage](#) and is also discussed in [diode theory](#).²⁷⁰)
 For this example, we will select V_{BE} to be +0.725 volts.
 Resistor R_2 's voltage, V_{R2} can be calculated as follows.

$$V_{R2} = V_E + V_{BE}$$

$$= 0.5 + 0.725$$

$$= 1.225 \text{ volts}$$
7. Using V_{R2} determined in step (6) and the selected bias current, I_{R2} , use [Ohm's law](#)⁹⁰ to determine R_2 's [resistance](#)⁹² value.

$$R_2 = V_{R2} / I_{R2}$$

$$= 1.225 \text{ volts} / 0.25 \text{ ma}$$

$$= 1.225 / 0.00025$$

$$= 4900 \text{ ohms}$$
8. The [voltage](#)⁹⁵ across resistor R_1 , can be calculated as follows.

$$V_{R1} = V_S - V_{R2}$$

$$= 9.0 - 1.225$$

$$= 7.775 \text{ volts}$$
9. Finally, using [Ohm's law](#),⁹⁰ determine R_1 's [resistance](#)⁹² value.

$$R_1 = V_{R1} / I_{R1}$$

$$= 7.775 \text{ volts} / 0.26 \text{ ma}$$

$$= 1.225 / 0.00026$$

$$= 29900 \text{ ohms}$$

Related topics:

[Transistor theory](#)²⁷⁴

[Transistor exercise](#)²⁷⁴

[Transistor knowledge test](#)²⁸⁰

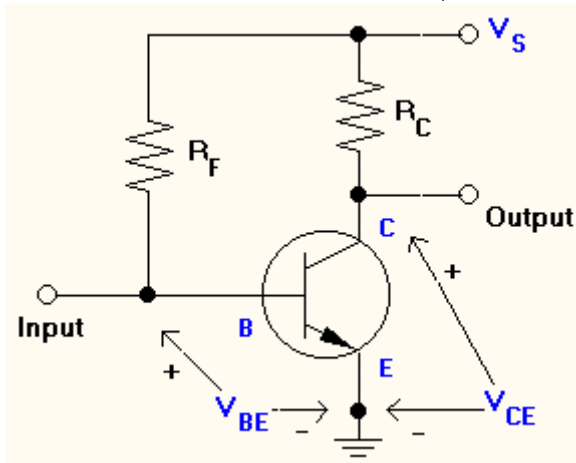
[Semiconductor tutorial](#)²⁷⁰

Semiconductor Tutorial



Transistor Exercise Knowledge Test

1. The terminals on a transistor are named: _____, _____ and _____. [\(answer\)\(37\)](#)²⁹⁶
2. There are two types of transistors, _____ and _____.
3. The _____ current controls the output _____ current. [\(answer\)\(38\)](#)²⁹⁶
4. A transistor can amplify an input signal. A small change in the _____ current will cause a large change in the transistor's _____ current.
5. If a transistor's input base current, I_B is 2 ma and the output collector current, I_C is 220 ma, what is the transistor's current gain, h_{FE} ? [\(answer\)\(39\)](#)²⁹⁶
6. If a transistor's input base current, I_B is 1.5 ma and the output collector current, I_C is 180 ma, what is the transistor's current gain, h_{FE} ?
7. If a transistor's current gain, h_{FE} is 125, and the output collector current, I_C is 200 ma, what is the input base current, I_B ?
8. Because of the high current gains for most transistors, the _____ current is approximately equal to the _____ current. [\(answer\)\(40\)](#)²⁹⁶
9. To operate, a transistor's emitter-to-base terminals must be _____.
10. The three types of transistor circuits are _____, _____ and _____. [\(answer\)\(41\)](#)²⁹⁶
11. Determine the fixed-bias resistor, R_F value in the following circuit.



Given

$$V_S = 12.0 \text{ volts}$$

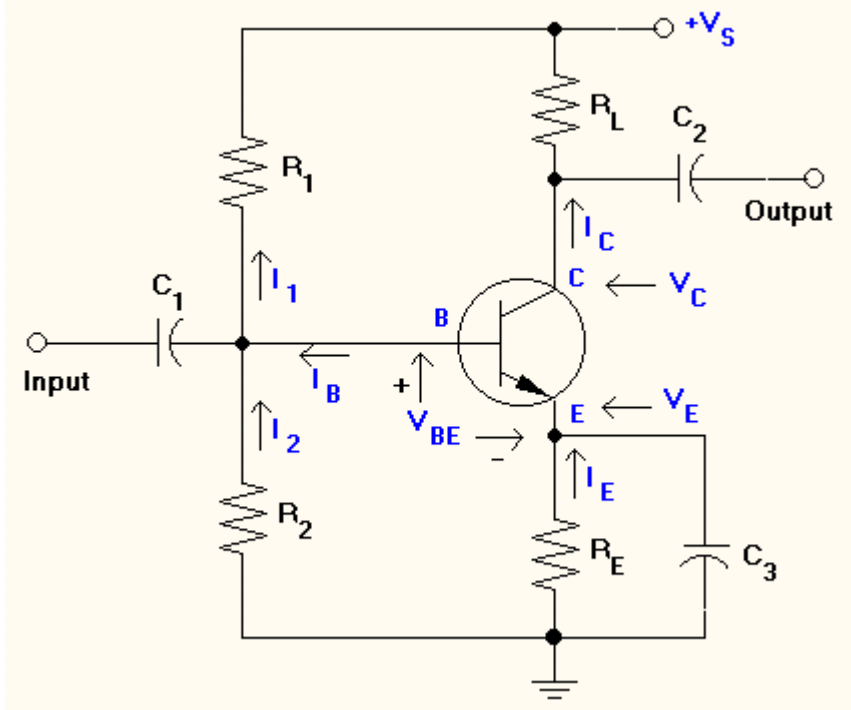
$$R_C = 3000 \text{ ohms}$$

$$V_{CE} = 2.5 \text{ volts (desired operating point)}$$

$$h_{FE} = 120 \text{ (common emitter current gain)}$$

Hint: follow the steps in Example 1 in the [examples](#)²⁷⁶ topic.

12. Determine the values for R_L , R_E , R_1 and R_2 in the following circuit.



Given

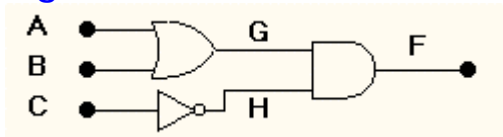
$V_S = 12.0$ volts
 $V_C = 3.5$ volts (desired operating point)
 $I_C = 1.25$ milliamp (desired operating point)
 $V_E = 0.75$ volts
 $h_{FE} = 120$ (common emitter current gain)

Hint: follow the steps in Example 2 in the [examples](#)²⁷⁶ topic.

Related topics:

[Transistor theory](#)²⁷⁴
[Transistor examples](#)²⁷⁶
[Transistor exercise](#)²⁷⁴
[Semiconductor tutorial](#)²⁷⁰

Digital Circuits Tutorial



This tutorial covers the following topics:

- How [logic gates](#)³⁴ operate in [digital circuits](#).⁸⁴
- How [boolean expressions](#)⁸² can be used to describe digital circuits.
- How to use the [digital analysis](#)³² function.

Exercises:

[Logic gate exercise](#)²⁸²

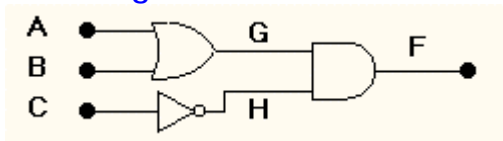
Related topics:

[General tutorial introduction and instructions](#)²⁰¹

[Tutorial topic tree](#)²⁰³

Digital Circuits Tutorial

Logic Gate Exercise



Theory

Basic [logic gate](#)³⁴ characteristics and operation can be found in [theory](#).²⁸²

Examples

Several simple [logic gate](#)³⁴ circuits can be found in [examples](#).²⁸⁵

Demonstration

[Logic circuit demonstration](#)²⁸⁷ provides instructions to construct a simple Circuit Shop circuit which simulates an automobile headlight alarm. This demonstration shows how to use Circuit Shop's [digital device toolkit](#)⁵¹ and [digital analysis](#)³² function.

Knowledge test

Review questions can be found in [knowledge test](#).²⁹⁰

Related topics:

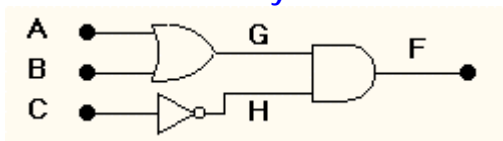
[Digital circuits tutorial](#)²⁸²

[Tutorial topic tree](#)²⁰³

Digital Circuits Tutorial

Logic Gate Exercise

Theory

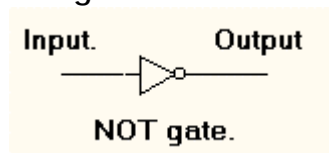


[Logic gates](#)³⁴ are the building blocks of [digital circuits](#).⁸⁴ Logic gates can be connected together to make digital systems of any size and complexity, including large digital computers.

The following [logic gates](#)³⁴ are discussed below:

- [NOT](#)⁹⁰
- [AND](#)⁸² and [NAND](#)⁸²
- [OR](#)⁹¹ and [NOR](#)⁹¹
- [EXCLUSIVE-OR](#)⁸⁶ and [EXCLUSIVE-NOR](#)⁸⁶

NOT gate



The [NOT gate](#)⁹⁰ is the simplest [logic gate](#).³⁴ The NOT gate has a single input. The output level is the reverse of the input level.

- If the input level is [HIGH](#), (logic level [1](#)) the output is [LOW](#) (logic level [0](#)).
- If the input level is [LOW](#), (logic level [0](#)) the output is [HIGH](#) (logic level [1](#)).

In other words, a [NOT gate](#)⁹⁰ [inverts](#) its input.

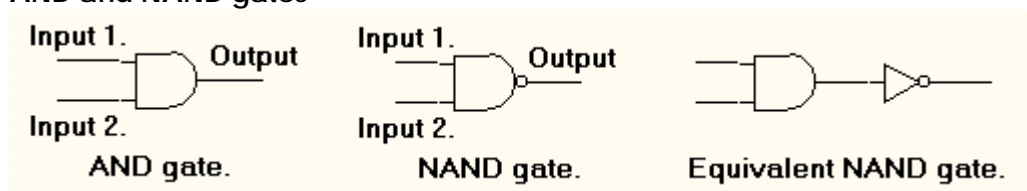
The behaviour of logic gates is usually represented in [truth tables](#).⁹⁴ The truth table for a NOT gate is shown below.

Input	Output
=====	=====
0	1
1	0

Digital circuits can also be described using [boolean expressions](#).⁸² The boolean expression for a NOT gate where [A](#) is the input and [B](#) is the output is shown below

$$B = \overline{A}$$

AND and NAND gates



The [AND gate](#)⁸² has 2 or more inputs. The output level depends on the input levels.

- If [all](#) input levels are [HIGH](#), (logic level [1](#)) the output is [HIGH](#) (logic level [1](#)).
- If [any](#) input level is [LOW](#), (logic level [0](#)) the output is [LOW](#) (logic level [0](#)).

In other words, for a 2 input [AND gate](#)⁸² the output is [HIGH](#) when input 1 is [HIGH](#) **AND** input 2 is [HIGH](#).

The [NAND gate](#)⁸² (NOT AND gate) is an [inverted AND gate](#).⁸² The above diagram shows how an [AND gate](#)⁸² can be combined with a [NOT gate](#)⁹⁰ to form a [NAND gate](#).⁸²

The [truth table](#)⁹⁴ for 2 input AND and NAND gates is shown below.

Input 1	Input 2	AND Output	NAND Output
=====	=====	=====	=====

0	0	0	1
0	1	0	1
1	0	0	1
1	1	1	0

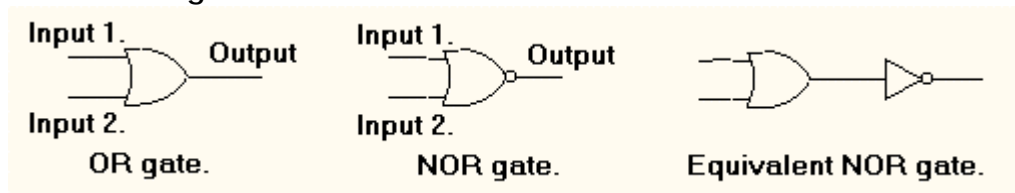
As can be seen above, the AND gate's⁸² output is logic level 1 only when both inputs are logic level 1. Also, the NAND gate's⁸² output, is the inverse of the AND gate.⁸²

The boolean expressions⁸² for AND and NAND gates where A and B are inputs and C is the output are shown below

AND : $C = AB$ or $C = A \cdot B$

NAND: $C = \overline{AB}$ or $C = \overline{A \cdot B}$

OR and NOR gates



The OR gate⁹¹ has 2 or more inputs. The output level depends on the input levels.

- If any input level is HIGH, (logic level 1) the output is HIGH (logic level 1).
- If all input levels are LOW, (logic level 0) the output is LOW (logic level 0).

In other words, for a 2 input OR gate.⁹¹ the output is HIGH when input 1 is HIGH OR input 2 is HIGH.

The NOR gate⁹¹ (NOT OR gate) is an inverted OR gate.⁹¹ The above diagram shows how an OR gate⁹¹ can be combined with a NOT gate⁹⁰ to form a NOR gate.⁹¹

The truth table⁹⁴ for 2 input OR and NOR gates is shown below.

Input 1	Input 2	OR Output	NOR Output
=====	=====	=====	=====
0	0	0	1
0	1	1	0
1	0	1	0
1	1	1	0

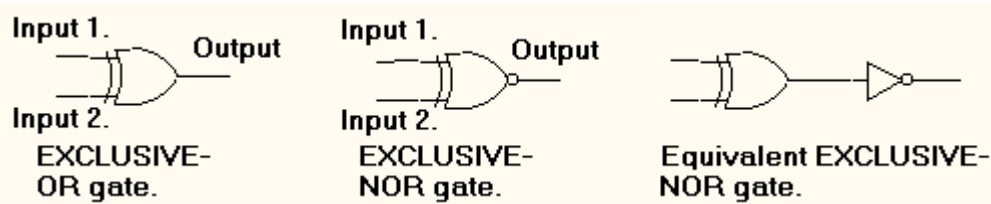
As can be seen above, the OR gate's⁹¹ output is logic level 1 when either input is logic level 1. Also, the NOR gate's⁹¹ output, is the inverse of the OR gate.⁹¹

The boolean expressions⁸² for OR and NOR gates where A and B are inputs and C is the output are shown below

OR : $C = A + B$

NOR: $C = \overline{A + B}$

EXCLUSIVE-OR and EXCLUSIVE-NOR gates



The [EXCLUSIVE-OR gate](#)⁸⁶ has 2 or more inputs. The output level depends on the input levels.

- If [one and only one](#) input level is [HIGH](#), (logic level [1](#)) the output is [HIGH](#) (logic level [1](#)).
- If [all](#) input levels are [LOW](#), (logic level [0](#)) the output is [LOW](#) (logic level [0](#)).
- If [more than one](#) input level is [HIGH](#), (logic level [1](#)) the output is [LOW](#) (logic level [0](#)).

In other words, for an [EXCLUSIVE-OR gate](#)⁸⁶ the output is [HIGH](#) when one and only one input is [HIGH](#).

The [EXCLUSIVE-NOR gate](#)⁸⁶ (NOT EXCLUSIVE-OR gate) is an [inverted EXCLUSIVE-OR gate](#)⁸⁶. The above diagram shows how an [EXCLUSIVE-OR gate](#)⁸⁶ can be combined with a [NOT gate](#)⁹⁰ to form an [EXCLUSIVE-NOR gate](#)⁸⁶.

The [truth table](#)⁹⁴ for 2 input EXCLUSIVE-OR and EXCLUSIVE-NOR gates is shown below.

Input 1 =====	Input 2 =====	EXCLUSIVE- OR Output =====	EXCLUSIVE- NOR Output =====
0	0	0	1
0	1	1	0
1	0	1	0
1	1	0	1

As can be seen above, the [EXCLUSIVE-OR gate's](#)⁸⁶ output is logic level [1](#) when only one input is logic level [1](#). Also, the [EXCLUSIVE-NOR gate's](#)⁸⁶ output, is the [inverse](#) of the [EXCLUSIVE-OR gate](#)⁸⁶.

The [boolean expressions](#)⁸² for EXCLUSIVE-OR and EXCLUSIVE-NOR gates where [A](#) and [B](#) are inputs and [C](#) is the output are shown below

EXCLUSIVE-OR : $C = A \oplus B$

EXCLUSIVE-NOR: $C = \overline{A \oplus B}$

Related topics:

[Logic gate examples](#)²⁸⁵

[Logic gate knowledge test](#)²⁹⁰

[Logic gate demonstration circuit](#)²⁸⁷

[Logic gate demonstration circuit construction](#)²⁸⁸

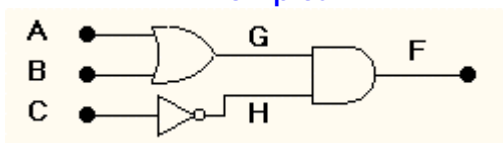
[Logic gate exercise](#)²⁸²

[Digital circuits tutorial](#)²⁸²

Digital Circuits Tutorial

Logic Gate Exercise

Examples



Example 1

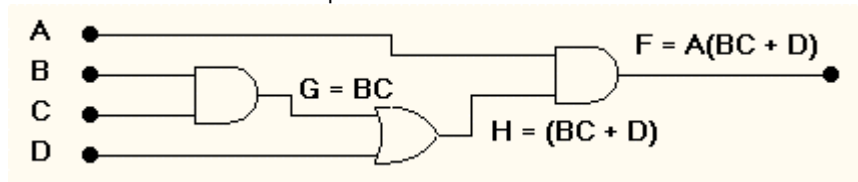
Create a [digital circuit](#)⁸⁴ for the following [boolean expression](#)⁸².

$$F = A(BC + D)$$

There are three steps:

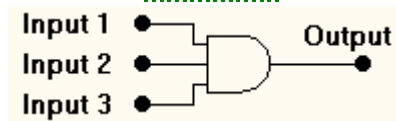
1. Use an [AND gate](#)⁸² to evaluate BC and assign the output to G .
2. Use an [OR gate](#)⁹¹ to evaluate $(G + D)$ which is the same as $(BC + D)$ and assign the output to H .
3. Use an [AND gate](#)⁸² to evaluate AH which is the same as $A(BC + D)$ and assign the output to F .

The circuit for this example is shown below.



Example 2

Create a [truth table](#)⁹⁴ for a 3 input [AND gate](#).⁸²



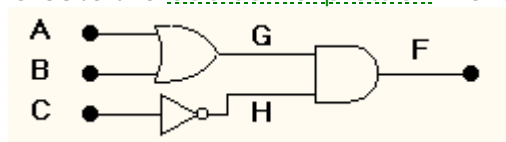
As described in [Logic Gate Theory](#),²⁸² an [AND gate's](#)⁸² output is logic level 1 only when all inputs are logic level 1. Using this fact, the following truth table can be created.

Input 1	Input 2	Input 3	AND Output
0	0	0	0
0	0	1	0
0	1	0	0
0	1	1	0
1	0	0	0
1	0	1	0
1	1	0	0
1	1	1	1

As can be seen above, the [AND gate's](#)⁸² output is logic level 1 only when all inputs are logic level 1.

Example 3

Create the [boolean expression](#)⁸² for the following [digital circuit](#).⁸⁴



There are three steps:

1. $G = A + B$
2. $H = \bar{C}$
3. $F = GH = (A + B) \cdot \bar{C}$

Related topics:

[Logic gate theory](#)²⁸²

[Logic gate knowledge test](#)²⁹⁰

[Logic gate demonstration circuit](#)²⁸⁷

Digital Circuits Tutorial

Logic Gate Exercise

Demonstration Circuit

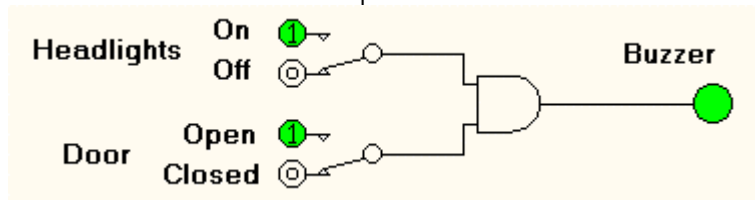
This topic demonstrates how to construct and analyze a [digital circuit](#)⁸⁴ composed of [digital sources](#),³³ [logic gates](#)³⁴ and [digital displays](#).³⁶

The circuit simulates an automobile headlight alarm. I.e. when the headlights are on AND the door is open, the buzzer will sound.

- [Digital source switches](#)⁸⁵ are used to simulate the headlight on/off switch and the door open/closed switch.
- A [digital display lamp](#)⁸⁴ is used to simulate the alarm buzzer.

Step 1 - construct the circuit

Use Circuit Shop tools to construct the following circuit. See [detailed instructions](#)²⁸⁸ if you are unfamiliar with Circuit Shop.



Step 2 - analyse the circuit




Use the [Tool | Analyse](#)⁴⁶ menu command or the [toolbar](#)³⁷ icon  to analyse the circuit. [Analysing a circuit](#)¹⁹ provides additional details.

If the circuit has been correctly constructed and either [digital source switch](#)⁸⁵ is at logic level 0, the [digital display lamp](#)⁸⁴ should turn off.

Step 3 - toggle the headlight and door switches



1. Using the mouse, click the pointer icon  on the [toolbar](#)³⁷ or the [analog device toolkit](#).⁵²
2. Move the mouse onto the diagram over one of the [digital source switches](#).⁸⁵
3. Single click the mouse on the switch to toggle its output level. The [digital analysis](#)³² function will be invoked.

If the circuit has been correctly constructed, [wires](#)⁹⁵ connected to a [digital source switch](#)⁸⁵ which is set to logic level 1 will be highlighted. This indicates that that wire is also at logic level 1.

If both [digital source switch](#)⁸⁵ outputs are set to logic level 1, (i.e. the headlights are on AND the door is open) both inputs to the [AND gate](#)⁸² will be logic level 1. This will cause the output of the AND gate to also be at logic level 1 and will cause the [digital display lamp](#)⁸⁴ to turn on (i.e. in an automobile, the buzzer will sound).

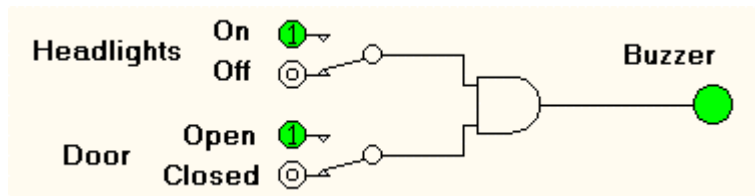
Related topics:

Digital Circuits Tutorial

Logic Gate Exercise


Demonstration Circuit

Circuit Construction




This topic provides detailed instructions to construct the logic gate demonstration circuit shown in the above title bar.


Open a diagram window and display the digital device toolkit:

1. Use the [File|New](#)³⁹ menu command or the [toolbar](#)³⁷ icon  to open a new diagram window. [Creating a new diagram window](#)¹⁵ provides additional details.
2. Ensure the [digital device toolkit](#)⁵¹ is visible. If the toolkit is not visible, use the [View|Digital](#)




[Device Toolkit](#)⁴⁹ menu command or the [toolbar](#)³⁷ icon  to display it.


Add two digital source switches to the diagram:

1. Using the mouse, click the [digital source switch](#)⁸⁵ icon  on the [digital device toolkit](#)⁵¹.
2. Move the mouse onto the diagram to approximately the center of the diagram window.
3. Click the mouse to place the first [digital source switch](#)⁸⁵ on the diagram. This will simulate the automobile headlight switch. [Adding devices](#)¹² provides additional details.
4. As shown in the above title bar, place a second [digital source switch](#)⁸⁵ on the diagram just below the first. This will simulate the automobile door switch.

Add an AND gate to the diagram:

1. Using the mouse, click the [AND gate](#)⁸² icon  on [digital device toolkit](#)⁵¹.
2. Move the mouse onto the diagram to where the [AND gate](#)⁸² is to be located. See circuit layout in above title bar.
3. Click the mouse to place the [AND gate](#)⁸² on the diagram.

Add a digital display lamp to the diagram:

1. Using the mouse, click the [digital display lamp](#)⁸⁴ icon  on [digital device toolkit](#)⁵¹.
2. Move the mouse onto the diagram to where the [digital display lamp](#)⁸⁴ is to be located. See circuit layout in above title bar.
3. Click the mouse to place the [digital display lamp](#)⁸⁴ on the diagram.

Layout the circuit:



1. Using the mouse, click the pointer icon on the [toolbar](#)³⁷ or the [analog device toolkit](#).⁵²
2. If necessary, move the devices so they are positioned as shown in the above title bar. To move a device, press the left mouse button over the device and drag it to the new location. [Moving devices](#)¹⁷ provides additional details.

Add wires to connect the devices:



1. Using the mouse, click the [wire](#)⁹⁵ icon on the [toolbar](#)³⁷ or the [analog device toolkit](#).⁵²
2. Move the mouse onto the diagram over the output terminal of the top [digital source switch](#).⁸⁵
3. Press the left mouse button and drag the wire to the top input terminal of the [AND gate](#).⁸² [Connecting devices](#)¹⁴ provides additional details.
4. Repeat steps (2) and (3) to connect the output terminal of the bottom [digital source switch](#)⁸⁵ to the bottom input terminal of the [AND gate](#).⁸²
5. Repeat steps (2) and (3) to connect the [AND gate](#)⁸² output terminal to the [digital display lamp](#)⁸⁴ input terminal.

At this point the circuit connections are complete and the devices should be connected as shown in the above title bar.

Add wire vertices (optional):

1. As shown in the circuit layout in above title bar, the [wires](#)⁹⁵ between the [digital source switches](#)⁸⁵ and the [AND gate](#)⁸² inputs have "kinks" called [vertices](#).⁹⁵



- Using the mouse, click the pointer icon on the [toolbar](#)³⁷ or the [analog device toolkit](#).⁵²
2. Move the mouse onto the diagram over the [wire](#)⁹⁵ portion where the vertex is to be added.
 3. Press the left mouse button and drag the [wire](#)⁹⁵ to the desired vertex location.
 4. Release the mouse button.
- [Adding](#)¹² - [moving](#)¹⁶ and [deleting a wire vertex](#)¹⁵ provides additional details.

Add text annotations (optional):

1. First add ([empty](#)) text objects for each annotation. The text annotations are [Headlights](#), [On](#), [Off](#), [Door](#), [Open](#), [Closed](#) and [Buzzer](#).

Ensure the [paint toolkit](#)⁵⁴ is visible. If the toolkit is not visible, use the [View | Paint Toolkit](#)⁴⁹ menu



command or the [toolbar](#)³⁷ icon [PaintKit](#) to display it.



2. Using the mouse, select the text object on the [paint toolkit](#).⁵⁴
3. Move the mouse onto the diagram to where an ([empty](#)) text annotation is to be located.
4. Click the mouse to place a text object on the diagram.
5. Repeat steps (3) and (4) to add an ([empty](#)) text object for each annotation.
6. Next replace the ([empty](#)) text objects with the correct annotation text.



- Using the mouse, click the pointer icon on the [toolbar](#)³⁷ or the [analog device toolkit](#).⁵²
7. Move the mouse onto the diagram over the text object.
 8. Double click the mouse on an ([empty](#)) text object to open the [Edit Text dialog box](#).⁷⁰ Enter the correct annotation text and press [Ok](#).
 9. Repeat step (8) for each annotation shown in the above title bar.

To move an annotation, using the pointer, press the left mouse button over the annotation and drag it to the new location. [Moving objects](#)¹⁷ provides additional details.

At this point the circuit construction is complete. Return to [logic gate demonstration](#)²⁸⁷ to complete the exercise.

Related topics:

[Creating and editing diagrams](#)¹¹

[Menu commands](#)³⁷

[Toolbar commands](#)³⁷

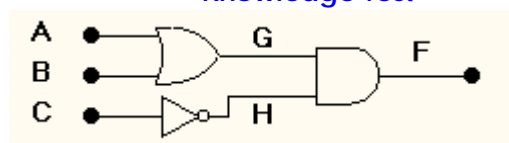
[Device and drawing toolkits](#)⁵¹

[Dialog boxes](#)⁶²

Digital Circuits Tutorial

Logic Gate Exercise

Knowledge Test

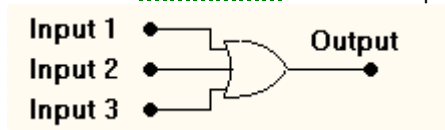


1. Create a [digital circuit](#)⁸⁴ for the following [boolean expression](#).⁸²

$$F = (A + B) \cdot (C + D)$$

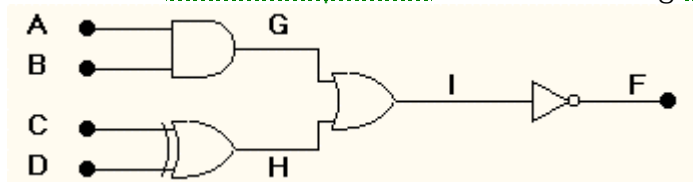
Hint: Create the circuit in steps. See example 1 in the [examples topic](#).²⁸⁵

2. Create a [truth table](#)⁹⁴ for a 3 input [OR gate](#).⁹¹



Hint: As described in the [theory topic](#),²⁸² an [OR gate's](#)⁹¹ output is logic level 1 when any input is logic level 1. Also, an example truth table can be found in example 2 in the [examples topic](#).²⁸⁵

3. Create the [boolean expression](#)⁸² for the following [digital circuit](#).⁸⁴



Hint: Create the boolean expression in steps, first create expressions for G and H, then I, and finally F.

Related topics:

[Logic gate theory](#)²⁸²

[Logic gate examples](#)²⁸⁵

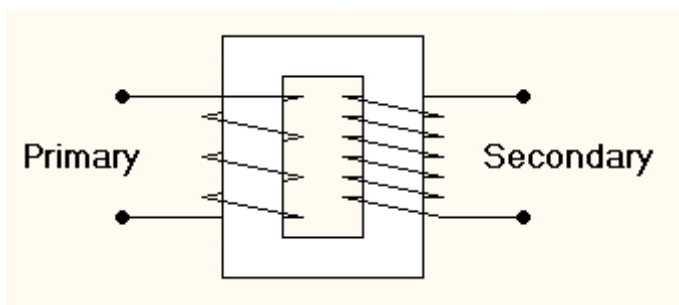
[Logic gate demonstration circuit](#)²⁸⁷

[Logic gate demonstration circuit construction](#)²⁸⁸

[Logic gate exercise](#)²⁸²

[Digital circuits tutorial](#)²⁸²

Answers



Answer 1:

The common names for transformer inputs and outputs are **Primary** and **Secondary** respectively.

Answer 2: Given an input voltage of 120 volts, an input current of 5 amps and an efficiency factor of 0.9, the expected output power can be calculated as:

$$\begin{aligned} P_o &= \eta \times P_i \\ &= 0.9 \times (E_i \times I_i) \\ &= 0.9 \times 120 \times 5 \\ &= 540 \text{ watts} \end{aligned}$$

Answer 3: Ohm's law states, the greater the voltage, the **greater** the current.

Answer 4: Ohm's law states, the greater the resistance, the **lower** the current.

Answer 5: Given a current of **0.5** amperes and a resistance of **2000** ohms in a circuit, the applied voltage may be found as

$$\begin{aligned} E &= I \times R \\ &= 0.5 \times 2000 \\ &= 1000 \text{ volts} \end{aligned}$$

Answer 6: Given a voltage of **50** volts and a resistance of **200** ohms in a circuit, the current in the circuit may be found as

$$I = \frac{E}{R} = \frac{50}{200} = 0.25 \text{ amperes}$$

Answer 7: Given a voltage of **500** volts and a current of **50** amperes in a circuit, the resistance in the circuit may be found as

$$R = \frac{E}{I} = \frac{500}{50} = 10 \text{ ohms}$$

Answer 8: If the circuit is correctly constructed, the device meter should display **114 mA** (milliamps).

Answer 9: The total resistance in a series circuit is the sum of the individual resistances.

$$\begin{aligned}
 R \text{ (total)} &= R1 + R2 + R3 \\
 &= 100 + 150 + 500 \\
 &= 750 \text{ ohms}
 \end{aligned}$$

Answer 10: The total resistance in a series circuit is the sum of the individual resistances.

$$\begin{aligned}
 R \text{ (total)} &= R1 + R2 + R3 \\
 &= 250 + 500 + 750 \\
 &= 1500 \text{ ohms}
 \end{aligned}$$

Using Ohm's law, the total current in a series circuit is equal to the total applied voltage divided by the total resistance.

$$\begin{aligned}
 I \text{ (total)} &= E \text{ (total)} / R \text{ (total)} \\
 &= 12 / 1500 \\
 &= 0.008 \text{ amps} \\
 &= 8 \text{ milliamps}
 \end{aligned}$$

Answer 11: The total resistance in a parallel circuit may be found using the following general formula.

$$R \text{ (total)} = \frac{1}{\frac{1}{R1} + \frac{1}{R2} + \frac{1}{R3} + \dots}$$

Using the circuit values

$$\begin{aligned}
 R \text{ (total)} &= 1 / (1/R1 + 1/R2 + 1/R3) \\
 &= 1 / (1/100 + 1/250 + 1/500) \\
 &= 1 / (0.01 + 0.004 + 0.002) \\
 &= 1 / 0.016 \\
 &= 62.5 \text{ ohms}
 \end{aligned}$$

Answer 12: The total resistance in the parallel may be found as

$$\begin{aligned}
 R \text{ (total)} &= 1 / (1/R1 + 1/R2 + 1/R3) \\
 &= 1 / (1/250 + 1/500 + 1/1500) \\
 &= 1 / (0.004 + 0.002 + 0.000667) \\
 &= 1 / 0.00667 \\
 &= 150 \text{ ohms}
 \end{aligned}$$

Using Ohm's law, the total current in a parallel circuit is equal to the total applied voltage divided by the total resistance. In the above circuit

$$\begin{aligned}
 I \text{ (total)} &= E \text{ (total)} / R \text{ (total)} \\
 &= 15 / 150 \\
 &= 0.1 \text{ amps}
 \end{aligned}$$

Answer 13: The number of complete cycles per second is called [frequency](#)⁸⁷ and is measured in [hertz](#).⁸⁸

Answer 14: $F \text{ (hertz)} = 1 / T \text{ (seconds)}$
 $= 1 / 0.001 \text{ seconds}$
 $= 1000 \text{ Hz}$

Answer 15: $F \text{ (hertz)} = 1 / T \text{ (seconds)}$
or
 $T \text{ (seconds)} = 1 / F \text{ (hertz)}$
 $= 1 / 1000$
 $= 0.001 \text{ seconds}$
 $= 1 \text{ millisecond}$

Answer 16: $V_{avg} = 0.637 * V_p$
 $= 0.637 * 100$
 $= 63.7 \text{ volts}$

Answer 17: $V_{rms} = 0.707 * V_p$
 $= 0.707 * 400$
 $= 283 \text{ volts}$

Answer 18: The total capacitance in a series circuit may be found using the following general formula.

$$C \text{ (total)} = \frac{1}{\frac{1}{C_1} + \frac{1}{C_2} + \frac{1}{C_3} + \dots}$$

Using the circuit values

$$\begin{aligned} C \text{ (total)} &= 1 / (1/C_1 + 1/C_2 + 1/C_3) \\ &= 1 / (1/10e-6 + 1/25e-6 + 1/50e-6) \\ &= 1 / (0.1e6 + 0.04e6 + 0.02e6) \\ &= 1 / 0.16e6 \\ &= 6.25e-6 \text{ farads} \\ &= 6.25 \mu\text{F} \end{aligned}$$

Answer 19: The total capacitance in a parallel circuit is the sum of the individual capacitances.

$$\begin{aligned} C \text{ (total)} &= C_1 + C_2 + C_3 \\ &= 10e-6 + 25e-6 + 50e-6 \\ &= 85e-6 \text{ farads} \\ &= 85 \mu\text{F} \end{aligned}$$

Answer 20: The circuit's time constant can be calculated as

$$\begin{aligned} t &= R \times C \\ &= 2.5e3 \times 2e-6 \\ &= 5.0e-3 \text{ seconds} \\ &= 0.005 \text{ seconds} \end{aligned}$$

Answer 21: The total inductance in a series circuit is the sum of the individual inductances.

$$L \text{ (total)} = L_1 + L_2 + L_3$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= 10\text{e-}3 + 25\text{e-}3 + 50\text{e-}3 \\
 &= 85\text{e-}3 \text{ henrys} \\
 &= 85 \text{ mH}
 \end{aligned}$$

Answer 22: The total inductance in a parallel circuit may be found using the following general formula.

$$L \text{ (total)} = \frac{1}{\frac{1}{L1} + \frac{1}{L2} + \frac{1}{L3} + \dots}$$

Using the circuit values

$$\begin{aligned}
 L \text{ (total)} &= 1 / (1/L1 + 1/L2 + 1/L3) \\
 &= 1 / (1/10\text{e-}3 + 1/25\text{e-}3 + 1/50\text{e-}3) \\
 &= 1 / (0.1\text{e}3 + 0.04\text{e}3 + 0.02\text{e}3) \\
 &= 1 / 0.16\text{e}3 \\
 &= 6.25\text{e-}3 \text{ henrys} \\
 &= 6.25 \text{ mH}
 \end{aligned}$$

Answer 23: The circuit's time constant can be calculated as

$$\begin{aligned}
 t &= L / R \\
 &= 20\text{e-}3 / 2.5\text{e}3 \\
 &= 8\text{e-}6 \text{ seconds} \\
 &= 8 \mu \text{ seconds}
 \end{aligned}$$

Answer 24: The capacitive reactance of a 0.5 μF capacitor at a frequency of 60 Hz can be calculated as

$$\begin{aligned}
 X_c &= \frac{1}{2\pi fC} \\
 &= 1 / (6.283 \times 60 \times 0.5\text{e-}6) \\
 &= 5.31\text{e}3 \text{ ohms} \\
 &= 5.31 \text{ kilo ohms}
 \end{aligned}$$

Answer 25: The inductive reactance of a 5 mH inductor at a frequency of 1.5 KHz can be calculated as

$$\begin{aligned}
 X_L &= 2\pi fL \\
 &= 6.283 \times 1.5\text{e}3 \times 5\text{e-}3 \\
 &= 47.1 \text{ ohms}
 \end{aligned}$$

Answer 26: Step 1: The capacitive reactance of a 4.5 μF capacitor at a frequency of 25 KHz can be calculated as

$$\begin{aligned}
 X_c &= \frac{1}{2\pi fC} \\
 &= 1 / (6.283 \times 25\text{e}3 \times 4.5\text{e-}6) \\
 &= 1.41 \text{ ohms}
 \end{aligned}$$

Step 2: Given an applied voltage of 2.5 mV and using **Ohm's law**, the capacitor's current can be calculated as

$$\begin{aligned}
 I &= \frac{E}{X_C} \\
 &= 2.5\text{e-}3 / 1.41 \\
 &= 1.77 \text{ mA}
 \end{aligned}$$

Answer 27: The resonant frequency of a 0.25 mH inductor and a 100 µF capacitor can be calculated as

$$\begin{aligned}
 f_r &= \frac{1}{2\pi \times \text{SQRT}(LC)} \\
 &= 1 / (2\pi \times \text{SQRT}(0.25\text{e-}3 \times 100\text{e-}6)) \\
 &= 1007 \text{ Hz} \\
 &= 1.007 \text{ kHz}
 \end{aligned}$$

Answer 28: The capacitance required to be in series with a 750 mH inductor to achieve a resonant frequency of 50 kHz can be calculated as

$$\begin{aligned}
 C &= \frac{1}{(2\pi)^2 \times f^2 \times L} \\
 &= 1 / ((2\pi)^2 \times 50\text{e}3^2 \times 750\text{e-}3) \\
 &= 13.5 \text{ pF}
 \end{aligned}$$

Answer 29: Given a voltage of 120 volts and a current of 2 amperes, the power in the circuit can be calculated as

$$\begin{aligned}
 P &= E \times I \\
 &= 120 \times 2 \\
 &= 240 \text{ watts}
 \end{aligned}$$

Answer 30: Given a voltage of 150 volts and a resistance of 1500 ohms, the power in the circuit can be calculated as

$$P = \frac{E^2}{R} = \frac{150^2}{1500} = 15 \text{ watts}$$

Answer 31: Given a current of 2 mA and a resistance of 2 M ohms, the power in the circuit can be calculated as

$$\begin{aligned}
 P &= I^2 \times R \\
 &= 2\text{e-}3^2 \times 2\text{e}6 \\
 &= 4\text{e-}6 \times 2\text{e}6 \\
 &= 8 \text{ watts}
 \end{aligned}$$

Answer 32: Given a power of 100 watts and a time duration of 12 hours, the energy used in the circuit can be calculated as

$$\begin{aligned} W &= P \times t \\ &= 100 \times 12 \\ &= 1200 \text{ watt-hours} \\ &= 1.2 \text{ kilowatt-hours} \end{aligned}$$

Answer 33: Given a voltage of 110 volts and a current of 2.5 amperes and a time duration of 48 hours, the energy used in the circuit can be calculated as

Step 1: calculate the circuit power

$$\begin{aligned} P &= E \times I \\ &= 110 \times 2.5 \\ &= 275 \text{ watts} \end{aligned}$$

Step 2: using the circuit power, calculate the energy used

$$\begin{aligned} W &= P \times t \\ &= 275 \times 48 \\ &= 13200 \text{ watt-hours} \\ &= 13.2 \text{ kilowatt-hours} \end{aligned}$$

Answer 34: A diode⁸⁵ is a two terminal device which acts like a one-way gate in a circuit. A diode allows current⁸⁴ to easily flow in one direction and not the other. In other words, a diode has a very low resistance⁹² in one direction and a very high resistance in the other.

Answer 35: For a silicon P-N junction diode, when the forward bias voltage reaches +0.7 volts and above, the diode turns on and presents a very low resistance to the circuit and current begins to flow. The +0.7 value is called the threshold voltage.

Answer 36: Diodes can be used to convert alternating current (AC)⁸¹ into direct current (DC).⁸⁶ This conversion is called rectification.

Answer 37: The terminals on a transistor are named: emitter, base and collector.

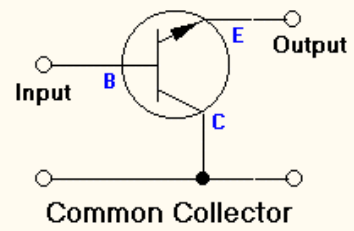
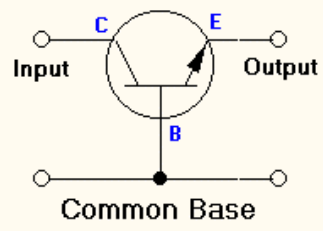
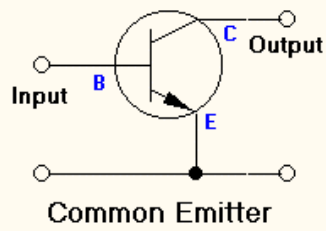
Answer 38: The base current controls the output collector current.

Answer 39: A transistor's current gain can be calculated as follows.

$$\begin{aligned} h_{FE} &= \frac{I_C}{I_B} \\ &= \frac{220 \text{ ma}}{2 \text{ ma}} \\ &= 110 \end{aligned}$$

Answer 40: Because of the high current gains for most transistors, the emitter current is approximately equal to the collector current.

Answer 41: The three types of transistor circuits are common emitter, common base and common collector.



Index

- 2 prong female plug, 93
- 2 prong male plug, 93
- 2 prong plug, 58

- 3 prong female plug, 93
- 3 prong male plug, 93
- 3 prong plug, 58

- 7 segment - digital display, 52
- 7 segment display, 87

- AC, 83
- AC current source, 59, 70, 83
- AC generator, 62, 83
- AC voltage source, 59, 70, 83
- Adding a device or object, 12
- Adding a line object, 13
- Adding a text object, 13
- Adding a vertex, 12
- Adding text, 13
- Alternating current, 83, 255, 257, 259, 260, 261, 262, 264, 266, 269
- Alternating Current - Tutorial, 255
- Alternating current examples, 257
- Alternating current knowledge test, 257
- Alternating current theory, 255
- Ammeter, 89
- Ampere, 83
- Amplifier, 62, 83
- Analog circuit, 83
- Analog device, 30, 31, 63, 65, 69, 70, 71, 76
- Analog device sub-toolkits, 54
- Analog device toolkit, 53
- Analog devices, 83, 84, 85, 86, 87, 88, 89, 90, 91, 92, 93, 94, 95, 96, 97, 98
- Analyse, 31
- Analyse command, 47
- Analysing a circuit, 20
- Analysis, 20, 23, 24, 26, 27, 28, 33, 34, 35, 37
- Analyzer, 53, 63
- AND gate, 35, 52, 68, 84
- Annotation, 13
- Annotations, 16
- Answers, 292
- Antenna, 57, 84
- Audio, 58
- Audio toolkit, 53, 54, 58
- Axis, 65

- Basic alternating current principles exercise, 255
- Battery, 53, 54, 59, 84
- bitmap, 42
- BMP, 42
- Circuit Shop
 - Boolean expression, 84, 283
 - Capacitance, 85, 237, 238, 239
 - Capacitive reactance, 94, 259
 - Capacitor, 53, 54, 61, 84, 85, 94, 237, 238, 239, 240, 242, 259, 262
 - Capacitor circuit time constant, 240
 - Capacitor examples, 240
 - Capacitor exercise, 237
 - Capacitor knowledge test, 242
 - Capacitor theory, 238
 - Capacitor toolkit, 53, 54, 61
 - Capacitors and inductors in AC circuits examples, 260
 - Capacitors and inductors in AC circuits exercise, 259
 - Capacitors and inductors in AC circuits knowledge test, 261
 - Capacitors and inductors in AC circuits theory, 259
 - Capacitors in series and parallel, 239
 - Capacitors, Inductors and Transformers - Tutorial, 237
 - CCCS, 59, 85, 86
 - CCVS, 59, 85, 86
 - Chassis ground, 57, 89
 - Cheque - purchase, 8
 - Circuit analysis, 20, 23, 24, 26, 27, 28, 33, 34, 35, 37
 - Circuit analysis help topics, 20
 - Circuit analyzer, 31, 53, 63
 - Circuit macro, 21
 - Circuit Shop files, 76
 - Connecting devices, 14
 - Connecting devices - adding wires and connectors, 14
 - Connector, 14, 38, 53, 85
 - Contents, 2
 - Creating a new diagram window, 15
 - Creating and editing diagrams, 11
 - Creating circuits inside integrated circuits, 21
 - Creating diagrams, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20
 - Crystal, 62, 85
 - Cubic spline, 13
 - Current, 30, 83, 86, 88
 - Current source, 59, 70, 83, 86
 - Current-controlled current source (CCCS), 59, 85
 - Current-controlled voltage source (CCVS), 59, 85
 - Cursor keys, 17
 - Curved line, 13
 - Curved line tool, 55
 - Cut/paste buffer, 44, 45, 46

- D flip-flop, 35
- dB, 86
- DC, 88
- DC analysis, 23, 30
- DC analysis supported devices, 24
- DC motor, 62, 86
- Decibel, 86
- Deleting a device or object, 15
- Deleting a vertex, 15
- Demonstration circuits, 207, 208, 215, 217, 225, 226, 264, 266, 288, 289
- Dependent current source, 85, 86, 97
- Dependent source, 85, 86, 97
- Dependent voltage and current source, 59
- Dependent voltage and current sources, 86
- Dependent voltage source, 85, 86, 97
- Device and drawing toolkits, 52, 53, 54, 55, 56, 57, 58, 59, 60, 61, 62
- Device meter, 30, 53, 54
- Devices, 83, 84, 85, 86, 87, 88, 89, 90, 91, 92, 93, 94, 95, 96, 97, 98
- Diagram annotations, 16
- Dialog boxes, 63, 65, 66, 67, 68, 69, 70, 71, 72, 73, 74, 75
- Dielectric, 86
- Digital analysis, 23, 33, 35
- Digital analysis off command, 48
- Digital analysis on command, 48
- Digital analysis supported devices, 33
- Digital circuit, 86
- Digital circuits - Tutorial, 283
- Digital device, 66, 67, 68
- Digital device toolkit, 52
- Digital devices, 84, 87, 88, 91, 92, 93
- Digital display, 37, 52
- Digital display 7 segment, 52
- Digital display lamp, 52, 87
- Digital display seven segment, 87
- Digital source, 34, 52
- Digital source level 0, 52, 87
- Digital source level 1, 52, 87
- Digital source switch, 52, 87
- Digital switch, 52
- Diode, 57, 87, 91, 95, 97, 98
- Diode examples, 272
- Diode exercise, 271
- Diode knowledge test, 274
- Diode model, 87
- Diode theory, 271
- Diode toolkit, 53, 54, 57
- Direct current, 88
- Direct current analysis, 23
- Directories list box, 75
- Display, 37, 52
- Display 7 segment, 52
- Display lamp, 52, 87

- Drawing grid, 66
- Drawing grid command, 49
- Earphones, 58, 88
- Earth ground, 57, 89
- Edit analyzer dialog box, 63
- Edit append command, 44, 45, 46
- Edit axis information dialog box, 65
- Edit clear all command, 44
- Edit commands, 44, 45, 46
- Edit copy command, 44, 45, 46
- Edit cut command, 44, 45, 46
- Edit delete command, 45
- Edit device dialog box, 65
- Edit drawing grid dialog box, 66
- Edit flip-flop dialog box, 66
- Edit IC dialog box, 67
- Edit logic gate dialog box, 68
- Edit meter dialog box, 69
- Edit paste command, 44, 45, 46
- Edit redo command, 46
- Edit select all command, 44, 45, 46
- Edit source dialog box, 70
- Edit text dialog box, 71
- Edit transformer dialog box, 71
- Edit undo command, 46
- Editing diagrams, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20
- Ellipse tool, 55
- Energy, 88, 230, 234, 235
- Energy examples, 235
- Energy theory, 234
- Examples, 206, 213, 223, 231, 232, 233, 235, 240, 247, 253, 257, 260, 264, 272, 277, 286
- EXCLUSIVE-NOR gate, 35, 52, 68, 88
- EXCLUSIVE-OR gate, 35, 52, 68, 88
- Exercises, 205, 212, 221, 230, 237, 244, 251, 255, 259, 262, 271, 275, 283
- FAQ, 5
- Farad, 89
- Female plug, 58, 93
- FET, 89, 92
- Field effect transistor, 89
- File close command, 41
- File commands, 40, 41, 42, 43
- File exit command, 43
- File name input box, 74
- File new command, 40
- File open command, 40
- File output BMP file command, 42
- File print command, 41
- File print preview command, 42
- File printer setup command, 42
- File register command, 43
- File revert to saved command, 41
- File save as command, 41

File save command, **40**
 Files list box, **74**
 Fill tool, **55**
 Filled ellipse tool, **55**
 Filled rectangle tool, **55**
 Flip-flop, **35, 52, 66**
 Font command, **48**
 Free form line, **12, 15, 16, 18**
 Free form pen tool, **55**
 Frequency, **89**
 Frequency response, **23, 28, 31, 63**
 Frequently asked questions, **5**
 Full-wave rectifier, **89**
 Fuse, **60, 89**

Gate, **35, 52, 68, 84, 88, 92, 93, 96**
 General amplifier, **62**
 General meter, **62, 89**
 General tutorial introduction and instructions, **201**
 Giga, **76**
 Glossary, **79, 83, 84, 85, 86, 87, 88, 89, 90, 91, 92, 93, 94, 95, 96, 97, 98**
 Graph, **65**
 Grid, **66**
 Grid command, **49**
 Ground, **57, 89**
 Ground toolkit, **53, 54, 57**

Half-wave rectifier, **90**
 Help commands, **50**
 Help topic roadmap, **3, 203**
 Henry, **90**
 Hertz, **90**
 Hint4, **77**
 Hint5, **77**
 Hint6, **78**
 Hints, **77**
 Home page, **10**

IC, **21, 52, 67, 91**
 Ideal operational amplifier, **62, 90**
 Impedance, **30, 90**
 Inductance, **90, 237, 244, 245**
 Inductive reactance, **94, 259**
 Inductor, **53, 54, 61, 90, 91, 92, 94, 237, 244, 245, 246, 247, 249, 259, 262**
 Inductor circuit time constant, **246**
 Inductor examples, **247**
 Inductor exercise, **244**
 Inductor knowledge test, **249**
 Inductor theory, **244**
 Inductor toolkit, **53, 54, 61**
 Inductors in series and parallel, **245**
 Instructions - tutorial, **201**
 Integrate circuit, **21**
 Integrated circuit, **52, 67, 91**

Introduction - tutorial, **201**

JK flip-flop, **35**
 Junction FET, **89**

Key, **73**
 Kilo, **76**
 Kirchoff's current law, **91**
 Kirchoff's voltage law, **91**
 Knowledge test, **210, 219, 228, 235, 242, 249, 253, 257, 261, 269, 274, 281, 291**

Lamp, **62, 91**
 Lamp - digital display, **52**
 Laws, **91, 92**
 LED, **57, 91**
 Level 0 source, **52, 87**
 Level 1 source, **52, 87**
 Light emitting diode, **57, 91**
 Line, **12, 13, 15, 16, 18**
 Line tool, **55**
 Lines, **16**
 Logic gate, **35, 52, 68, 84, 88, 92, 93, 96, 288**
 Logic gate demonstration circuit, **288**
 Logic gate demonstration circuit construction, **289**
 Logic gate examples, **286**
 Logic gate exercise, **283**
 Logic gate knowledge test, **291**
 Logic gate theory, **283**
 Logic level 0 source, **52, 87**
 Logic level 1 source, **52, 87**
 Logic level display, **87**
 Logic level switch source, **52, 87**

Macro, **21**
 Mail address, **10**
 Male plug, **58, 93**
 Measure, **20, 30, 31, 63, 69**
 Mega, **76**
 Menu commands, **38**
 Metal-oxide-semiconductor field effect transistor, **92**
 Meter, **20, 30, 31, 53, 69**
 Micro, **76**
 Microphone, **58, 92**
 Milli, **76**
 Miscellaneous device, **62**
 Miscellaneous toolkit, **53, 54, 62**
 Modifying device or object attributes, **16**
 Money order - purchase, **8**
 MOSFET, **92**
 Moving a line object, **18**
 Moving a vertex, **16**
 Moving an object, **17**
 Mutual inductance, **92, 237, 251**

Circuit Shop

NAND gate, **35, 52, 68, 84**
 Nano, **76**
 NOR gate, **35, 52, 68, 93**
 Normally closed push button, **60, 94**
 Normally closed push relay, **94**
 Normally closed relay, **60**
 Normally open push button, **60, 94**
 Normally open push relay, **94**
 Normally open relay, **60**
 NOT gate, **35, 52, 68, 92**

 Ohm, **92**
 Ohmmeter, **89**
 Ohm's law, **92, 205, 206, 207, 208, 210, 259**
 Ohm's law demonstration circuit, **207**
 Ohm's law demonstration circuit construction, **208**
 Ohm's law examples, **206**
 Ohm's law exercise, **205**
 Ohm's law knowledge test, **210**
 Ohm's law theory, **205**
 Op amp, **62, 90, 93**
 Opening an existing diagram, **18**
 Operational amplifier, **62, 90, 93**
 OR gate, **35, 52, 68, 93**

 Paint toolkit, **55**
 Parallel, **239, 245**
 Parallel circuit, **93, 205, 221, 223, 225, 226, 228, 233**
 Parallel circuit demonstration circuit, **225**
 Parallel circuit demonstration circuit construction, **226**
 Parallel circuit examples, **223**
 Parallel circuit exercise, **221**
 Parallel circuit knowledge test, **228**
 Parallel circuit power, **233**
 Parallel circuit theory, **221**
 Pen background color command, **49**
 Pen foreground color command, **48**
 Pen size command, **48**
 Pen tool, **55**
 Phase, **93**
 Pico, **76**
 Plug, **58, 93**
 Plug in, **93**
 Plug in connector, **58**
 Pointer, **38, 53**
 Pointer tool, **16, 17, 18, 19**
 POT, **93**
 Potentiometer, **60, 93**
 Power, **30, 94, 230, 231, 232, 233, 235**
 Power and energy, **205**
 Power and energy exercise, **230**
 Power and energy knowledge test, **235**
 Power examples, **231**
 Circuit Shop

Power theory, **230**
 Pre-registration restrictions, **7**
 Print dialog box, **72**
 Printer commands, **41, 42**
 Printer setup dialog box, **72**
 Purchase order, **10**
 Purchasing, **7, 8, 9, 10, 73**
 Purchasing by cheque or money order, **8**
 Purchasing by purchase order, **10**
 Purchasing by web transaction, **9**
 Purchasing information, **7**
 Push button, **60, 94**

 Questions, **5**

 Reactance, **85, 90, 94**
 Receptacle, **58, 94**
 Rectangle tool, **55**
 Rectification, **94**
 Redo, **46**
 Registration, **7, 8, 9, 10, 43, 73**
 Registration dialog box, **73**
 Relay, **60, 94**
 Resistance, **95**
 Resistor, **53, 54, 60, 93, 94, 205**
 Resistor toolkit, **53, 54, 60**
 Resistors and Simple Circuits - Tutorial, **205**
 resonant frequency, **95**
 Restrictions, **7**
 RLC circuits, **262, 264, 266, 269**
 Roadmap, **3, 203**
 Rotating a device, **18**

 Scaling suffix, **76**
 SCR, **57, 95**
 Select file dialog box, **73**
 Select font dialog box, **75**
 Selecting objects, **19**
 Semiconductor, **95**
 Semiconductors - Tutorial, **271**
 Series, **239, 245**
 Series circuit, **95, 205, 212, 213, 215, 217, 219, 232**
 Series circuit demonstration circuit, **215**
 Series circuit demonstration circuit construction, **217**
 Series circuit examples, **213**
 Series circuit exercise, **212**
 Series circuit knowledge test, **219**
 Series circuit power, **232**
 Series circuit theory, **212**
 Series resistor-inductor-capacitor (RLC) circuits examples, **264**
 Series resistor-inductor-capacitor (RLC) circuits exercise, **262**
 Series resistor-inductor-capacitor (RLC) circuits knowledge test, **269**

Series resistor-inductor-capacitor (RLC) circuits theory, **262**
 Series resistor-inductor-capacitor (RLC) demonstration circuit, **264**
 Series resistor-inductor-capacitor (RLC) demonstration construction, **266**
 Set reset flip-flop, **35**
 Seven segment - digital display, **52**
 Seven segment display, **87**
 Silicon controlled rectifier, **57, 95**
 Single-pole single-throw switch, **60, 95**
 Sinusoidal steady state, **30**
 Sinusoidal steady state analysis, **23, 26**
 Sinusoidal steady state analysis supported devices, **27**
 Source, **34, 59, 70, 83**
 Source level 0, **52, 87**
 Source level 1, **52, 87**
 Source level switch, **87**
 Source switch, **52, 87**
 Source toolkit, **53, 54, 59**
 Speaker, **58, 95**
 SPST switch, **60, 95**
 SR - set reset flip-flop, **35**
 Starting and Exiting Circuit Shop, **11**
 Straight line, **12, 13, 15, 16, 18**
 Straight line tool, **55**
 Suffix character, **76**
 Supported devices, **24, 27, 33**
 Switch, **60, 89, 94, 95**
 Switch - digital, **52**
 Switch toolkit, **53, 54, 60**

 T - toggle flip-flop, **35**
 Tapped transformer, **61, 96**
 Technical support, **10**
 Terminal, **58, 95**
 Terminal and plug toolkit, **53, 54**
 Terminal toolkit, **58**
 Test, **210, 219, 228, 235, 242, 249, 253, 257, 261, 274, 281, 291**
 Text, **13**
 Text annotations, **16**
 Text tool, **55**
 Theory, **205, 212, 221, 230, 232, 233, 234, 238, 239, 240, 244, 245, 246, 251, 255, 259, 262, 271, 275, 283**
 Three prong female plug, **93**
 Three prong male plug, **93**
 Time constant, **96, 240, 246**
 Toggle flip-flop, **35**
 Tool analyse command, **47**
 Tool commands, **47**
 Tool Commands, **47, 48, 49**
 Tool digital analysis off, **48**
 Tool digital analysis on, **48**
 Tool drawing grid command, **49**
 Circuit Shop

Tool font command, **48**
 Tool pen background color command, **49**
 Tool pen foreground color command, **48**
 Tool pen size command, **48**
 Toolbar commands, **38**
 Toolkit, **50, 52, 53, 54, 55, 56, 57, 58, 59, 60, 61, 62**
 Topic tree, **3, 203**
 Transformer, **61, 71, 92, 96, 237, 251, 253**
 Transformer examples, **253**
 Transformer exercise, **251**
 Transformer knowledge test, **253**
 Transformer theory, **251**
 Transistor, **56, 96**
 Transistor examples, **277**
 Transistor exercise, **275**
 Transistor knowledge test, **281**
 Transistor theory, **275**
 Transistor toolkit, **53, 54, 56**
 Truth table, **96**
 Tunnel diode, **57, 97**
 Tutorial help topics, **201**
 Tutorial topic tree, **203**
 Tutorials, **201, 203, 205, 237, 255, 271, 283**
 Two prong female plug, **93**
 Two prong male plug, **93**

 Undo, **46**
 Unit conversion, **76**
 Units of measurement, **83, 85, 86, 89, 90, 92, 94, 97**
 Unselecting objects, **19**

 Value slider, **77**
 Variable capacitor, **61**
 Variable inductor, **61**
 Variable resistor, **60, 93**
 VCCS, **59, 86, 97**
 VCVS, **59, 86, 97**
 Vertex, **12, 13, 15, 16, 97**
 View analog device toolkit command, **50**
 View commands, **50**
 View Commands, **50**
 View digital device toolkit command, **50**
 View Paint toolkit command, **50**
 Viewing circuit voltage and current values, **20**
 Voltage, **30, 83, 97**
 Voltage source, **59, 70, 83, 86**
 Voltage-controlled current source (VCCS), **59, 97**
 Voltage-controlled voltage source (VCVS), **59, 97**
 Voltmeter, **89**

 Warranty, **10**
 Watt, **97**
 Watt-hour, **97**

Web transaction, **9**
What is Circuit Shop, **5**
Wire, **12, 14, 15, 16, 38, 53, 97**

Zener diode, **57, 98**